2007 Chevrolet Colorado Owner Manual

Seats and Restraint Systems 7
- Front Seats 9
- Rear Seats 17
- Safety Belts 20
- Child Restraints 43
- Airbag System 76
- Restraint System Check 94

Features and Controls 97
- Keys 99
- Doors and Locks 104
- Windows 110
- Theft-Deterrent Systems 112
- Starting and Operating Your Vehicle 115
- Mirrors 138
- OnStar® System 147
- Storage Areas 150
- Sunroof 153

Instrument Panel 155
- Instrument Panel Overview 158
- Climate Controls 176
- Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators ... 179
- Driver Information Center (DIC) 196
- Audio System(s) 205

Driving Your Vehicle 245
- Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle 246
- Towing 297

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Service and Appearance Care 319
Service 322
Fuel 325
Checking Things Under the Hood 330
Rear Axle 368
Four-Wheel Drive 368
Front Axle 369
Bulb Replacement 370
Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement ... 375
Tires 377
Appearance Care 424
Vehicle Identification 434
Electrical System 434
Capacities and Specifications 439

Maintenance Schedule 441
Maintenance Schedule 442

Customer Assistance Information 463
Customer Assistance and Information ... 464
Reporting Safety Defects 481

Index 485

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

GENERAL MOTORS, GM, the GM Emblem, CHEVROLET, the CHEVROLET Emblem, and the name COLORADO are registered trademarks of General Motors Corporation.

This manual includes the latest information at the time it was printed. We reserve the right to make changes after that time without further notice. For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name “General Motors of Canada Limited” for Chevrolet Motor Division whenever it appears in this manual.

This manual describes features that may be available in this model, but your vehicle may not have all of them. For example, more than one entertainment system may be offered or your vehicle may have been ordered without a front passenger or rear seats.

Keep this manual in the vehicle, so it will be there if it is needed while you are on the road. If the vehicle is sold, leave this manual in the vehicle.

Canadian Owners

A French language copy of this manual can be obtained from your dealer or from:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 15866155 A First Printing

©2006 General Motors Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Use This Manual

Many people read the owner manual from beginning to end when they first receive their new vehicle. If this is done, it can help you learn about the features and controls for the vehicle. Pictures and words work together in the owner manual to explain things.

Index

A good place to quickly locate information about the vehicle is the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

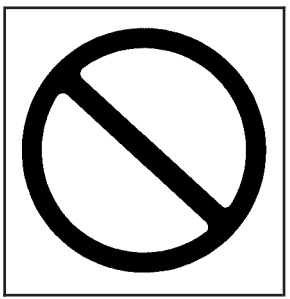
Safety Warnings and Symbols

There are a number of safety cautions in this book. We use a box and the word CAUTION to tell about things that could hurt you if you were to ignore the warning.

⚠ CAUTION:

These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.

In the caution area, we tell you what the hazard is. Then we tell you what to do to help avoid or reduce the hazard. Please read these cautions. If you do not, you or others could be hurt.



You will also find a circle with a slash through it in this book. This safety symbol means “Do Not,” “Do Not do this” or “Do Not let this happen.”

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Damage Warnings

Also, in this manual you will find these notices:

Notice: **These mean there is something that could damage your vehicle.**

A notice tells about something that can damage the vehicle. Many times, this damage would not be covered by your vehicle's warranty, and it could be costly. But the notice will tell what to do to help avoid the damage.

When you read other manuals, you might see CAUTION and NOTICE warnings in different colors or in different words.

There are also warning labels on the vehicle. They use the same words, CAUTION or NOTICE.

Vehicle Symbols

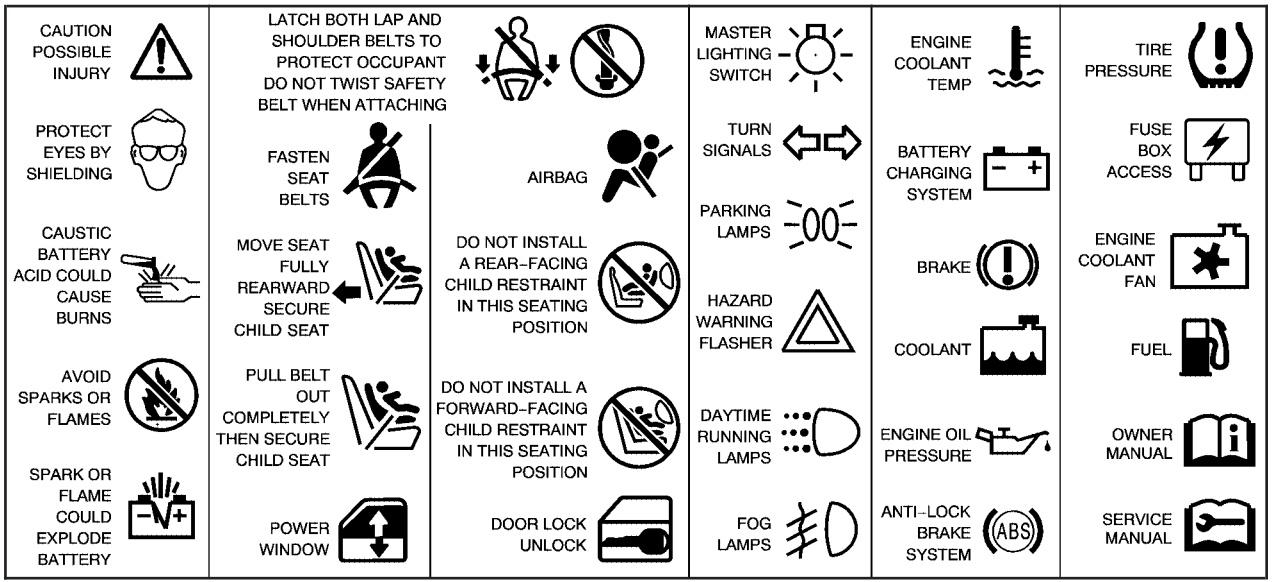
The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gage, or indicator.

If you need help figuring out a specific name of a component, gage, or indicator, reference the following topics:

- Seats and Restraint Systems in Section 1
- Features and Controls in Section 2
- Instrument Panel Overview in Section 3
- Climate Controls in Section 3
- Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators in Section 3
- Audio System(s) in Section 3
- Engine Compartment Overview in Section 5

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

These are some examples of symbols that may be found on the vehicle:



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 1 Seats and Restraint Systems

Front Seats 9
- Manual Seats 9
- Power Seats 10
- Manual Lumbar 10
- Power Lumbar 11
- Heated Seats 11
- Reclining Seatbacks 12
- Head Restraints 15
- Seatback Latches 16

Rear Seats 17
- Rear Seat Operation (Extended Cab) 17
- Rear Seat Operation (Crew Cab) 18

Safety Belts 20
- Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone 20
- Questions and Answers About Safety Belts 24
- How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 25
- Driver Position 25
- Shoulder Belt Height Adjustment 33
- Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 34
- Right Front Passenger Position 34
- Center Front Passenger Position 35
- Rear Seat Passengers 36
- Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides 39
- Safety Belt Pretensioners 42
- Safety Belt Extender 42

Child Restraints 43
- Older Children 43
- Infants and Young Children 46
- Child Restraint Systems 49
- Where to Put the Restraint 53
- Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) 56
- Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position 68
- Securing a Child Restraint in the Center Front Seat Position 71
- Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position 71

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 1 Seats and Restraint Systems

Airbag System 76
Where Are the Airbags? 79
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 82
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 84
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 84
What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 85
Passenger Sensing System 86
Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 92
Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 93
Restraint System Check 94
Checking the Restraint Systems 94
Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash 95

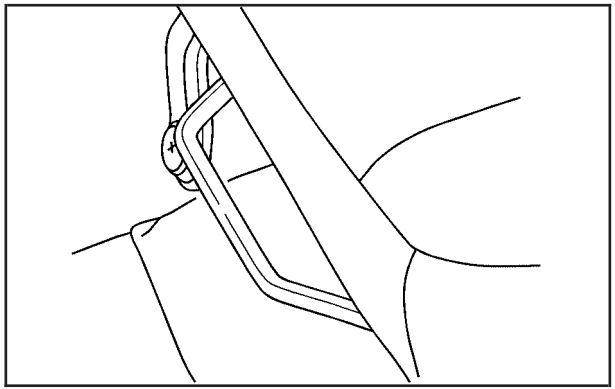
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Front Seats

Manual Seats

⚠ CAUTION:

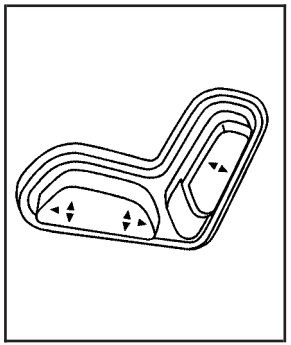
You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is not moving.



Lift the bar located under the front of the seat to unlock it. Slide the seat to where you want it and release the bar. Try to move the seat with your body to make sure the seat is locked into place.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Seats

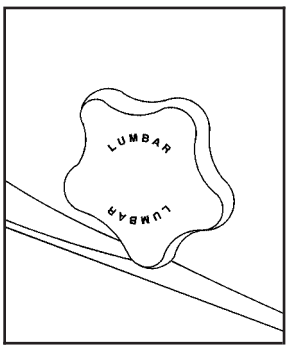


If the vehicle has power seats, the controls used to operate them are located on the outboard side of the seats.

To adjust the seat, do any of the following:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the horizontal control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the horizontal control up or down.
- Raise or lower the rear part of the seat cushion by moving the rear of the horizontal control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the entire horizontal control up or down.
- Use the vertical control to recline the seatback. See “Power Reclining Seatbacks” under *Reclining Seatbacks on page 12* for more information.

Manual Lumbar

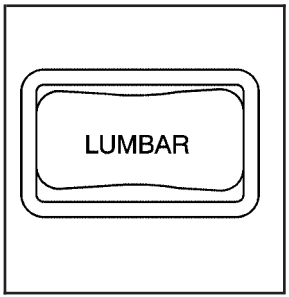


If your vehicle has this feature, there is a knob located on the outboard side of the driver’s seat.

Turn the top of the knob toward the front of the vehicle to increase lumbar support. Turn the top of the knob toward the rear of the vehicle to decrease lumbar support.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

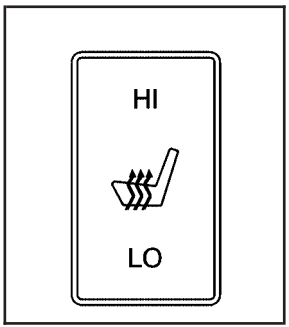
Power Lumbar



If your vehicle has this feature, the control is located on the outboard side of the seat(s).

Press and hold the front of the control until you have the desired lumbar support. To decrease lumbar support, press and hold the rear of the control.

Heated Seats



If your vehicle has this feature, the controls are located on the outboard side of the front seats.

This feature will heat the cushion and back of the seats.

Press the top of the switch to turn the heat to the high setting. Press the bottom of the switch to turn the heat to the low setting. Put the switch in the center position to turn the heat off.

The ignition must be on for the heated seat feature to work. The seat will heat to the last setting if the ignition has been turned off and then turned back on.

The passenger's safety belt must be fastened for the heated seat feature to work on the passenger's seat.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reclining Seatbacks

Manual Reclining Seatbacks

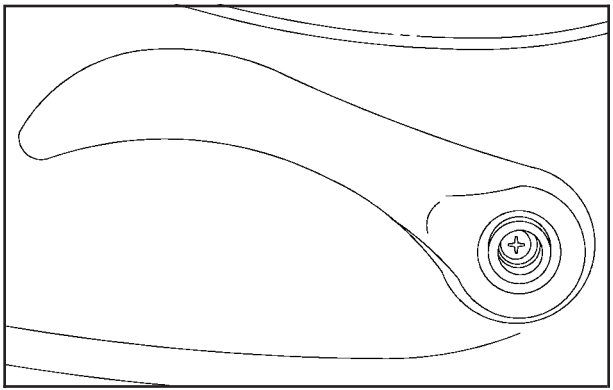
⚠ CAUTION:

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

If your seats have manual reclining seatbacks, the lever used to operate them is located on the outboard side of the seat(s).



To recline the seatback, do the following:

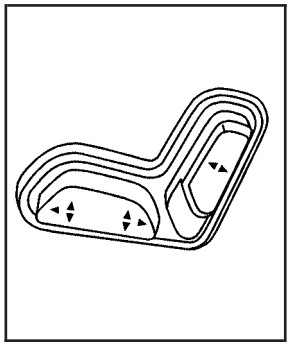
1. Lift the recline lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

To return the seatback to an upright position, do the following:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback and the seatback will return to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

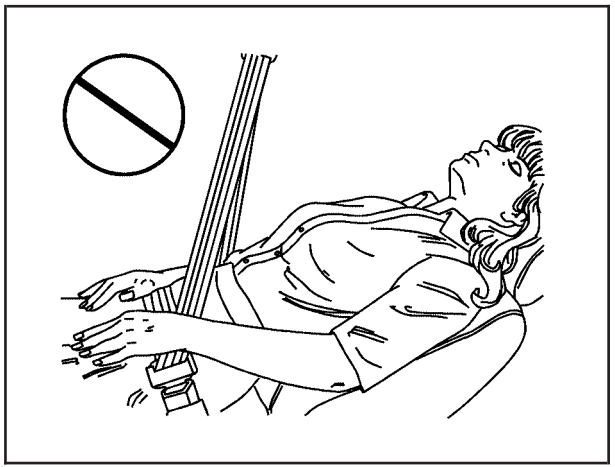
Power Reclining Seatbacks



If the seats have power reclining seatbacks, use the vertical power seat control located on the outboard side of the seat.

- To recline the seatback, press the control toward the rear of the vehicle.
- To raise the seatback, press the control toward the front of the vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



⚠ CAUTION:

Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your safety belts cannot do their job when you are reclined like this.

The shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt cannot do its job either. In a crash, the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

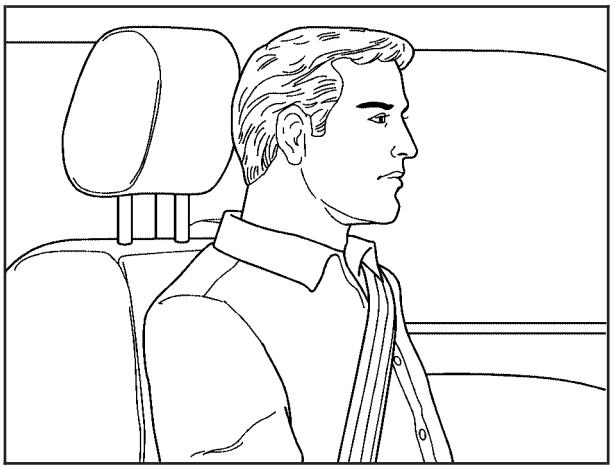
For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear your safety belt properly.

Do not have a seatback reclined if your vehicle is moving.

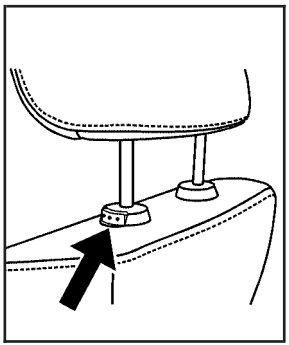
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Head Restraints

Your front seats may have adjustable head restraints. If your vehicle has rear seats, they may have adjustable head restraints.



Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

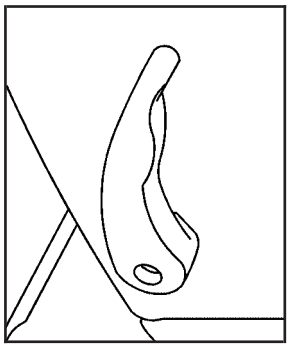


Pull up on the head restraint to raise it. To lower the head restraint, press the button located on top of the seatback and push down on the head restraint.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Seatback Latches

Your vehicle may have front seatbacks that fold forward for easy access to the rear seats or the storage area behind the seats.



To fold the seatback forward, push the lever on the side of the seat rearward and pull the seatback forward.

⚠ CAUTION:

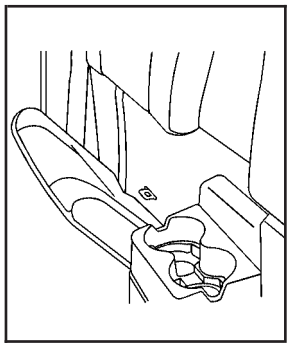
If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to the upright position, push the seatback all the way back until it latches. If the seatback was reclined before being folded forward, it will return to the reclined position.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Seats

Rear Seat Operation (Extended Cab)



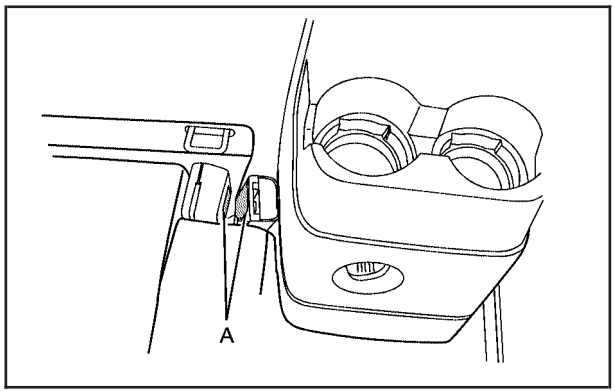
If your vehicle has an extended cab, there may be forward folding seats in the rear area.

To fold the rear seat cushion(s) from the stored position to the sitting position, pull the front of the seat cushion down completely.

The rear seat storage compartments must be closed before folding the seat down. See *Rear Storage Area on page 151*.

To store the seat, do the following:

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**



1. Secure the safety belt buckle to the inboard side of the seat with the hook and loop fastener (A), so that it does not move when not in use.
2. Push the entire seat up until it is flush with the trim panel.

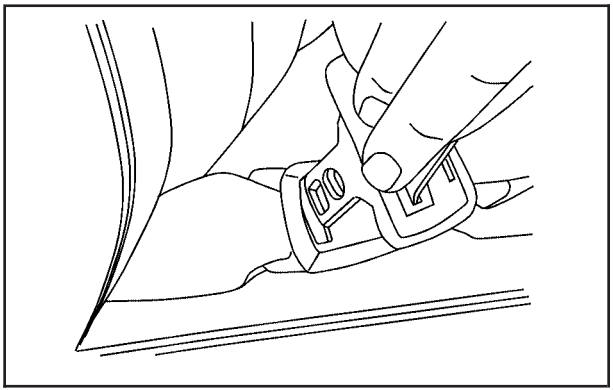
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Seat Operation (Crew Cab)

The rear seatback(s) in the crew cab can be folded forward.

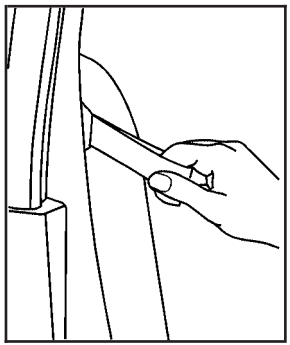
Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**

To fold the rear seatback(s) forward, do the following:



1. Disconnect the rear center safety belt latch from the mini buckle by inserting the tip of the safety belt tongue into the slot on the buckle. Let the belt retract.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



2. Pull the loop, located on the outboard side of the seatback, forward until you hear a click.

3. Fold the seatback(s) forward.

To return the seatback(s) to the upright position, do the following:

1. Lift the seatback(s) and push it into place.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

2. Make sure the seatback(s) is locked by pushing and pulling on it.

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

3. Reconnect the center safety belt latch plate to the mini buckle. Make sure the safety belt is not twisted. Push and pull on the latch plate to be sure it is secure.

When the seatback is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Belts

Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone

This part of the manual tells you how to use safety belts properly. It also tells you some things you should not do with safety belts.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not let anyone ride where he or she cannot wear a safety belt properly. If you are in a crash and you are not wearing a safety belt, your injuries can be much worse. You can hit things inside the vehicle or be ejected from it. You can be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be, if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passengers' belts are fastened properly too.

⚠ CAUTION:

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

Your vehicle has indicators to remind you and your passengers to buckle your safety belts. See *Safety Belt Reminder Light on page 182* and *Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light on page 182*.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

In most states and in all Canadian provinces, the law says to wear safety belts. Here is why: *They work*.

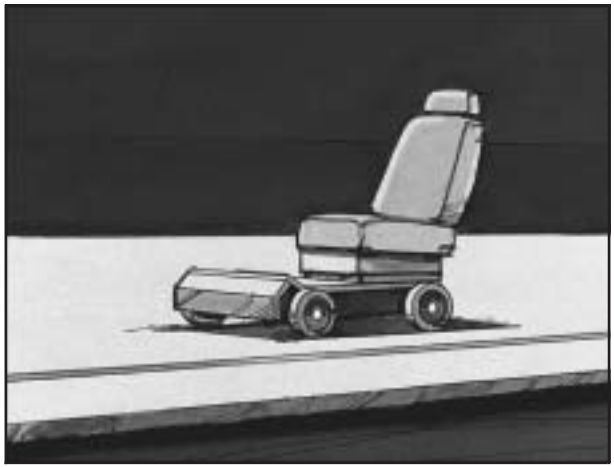
You never know if you will be in a crash. If you do have a crash, you do not know if it will be a bad one.

A few crashes are mild, and some crashes can be so serious that even buckled up, a person would not survive. But most crashes are in between. In many of them, people who buckle up can survive and sometimes walk away. Without belts they could have been badly hurt or killed.

After more than 40 years of safety belts in vehicles, the facts are clear. In most crashes buckling up does matter... a lot!

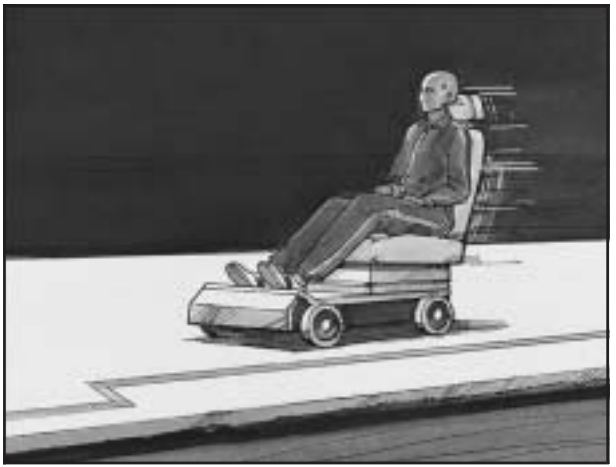
Why Safety Belts Work

When you ride in or on anything, you go as fast as it goes.

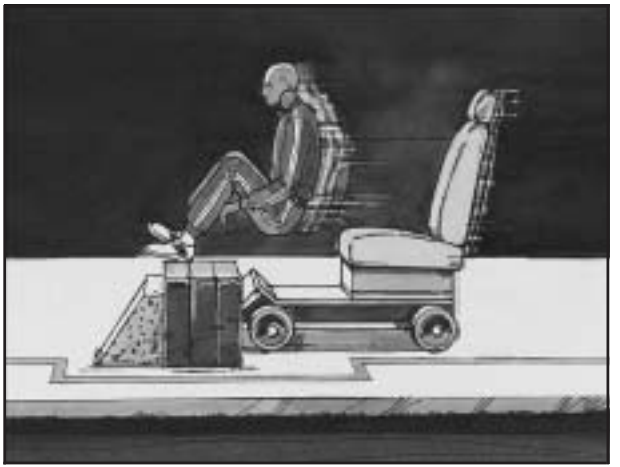


Take the simplest vehicle. Suppose it is just a seat on wheels.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



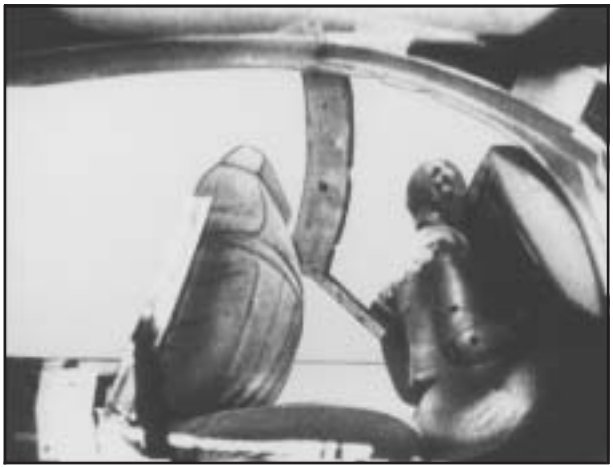
Put someone on it.



Get it up to speed. Then stop the vehicle. The rider does not stop.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The person keeps going until stopped by something. In a real vehicle, it could be the windshield...



or the instrument panel...

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

or the safety belts!

With safety belts, you slow down as the vehicle does. You get more time to stop. You stop over more distance, and your strongest bones take the forces. That is why safety belts make such good sense.

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after an accident if I am wearing a safety belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. But you can unbuckle a safety belt, even if you are upside down. And your chance of being conscious during and after an accident, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted.

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts — not instead of them. Every airbag system ever offered for sale has required the use of safety belts. Even if you are in a vehicle that has airbags, you still have to buckle up to get the most protection. That is true not only in frontal collisions, but especially in side and other collisions.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: If I am a good driver, and I never drive far from home, why should I wear safety belts?

A: You may be an excellent driver, but if you are in an accident — even one that is not your fault — you and your passengers can be hurt. Being a good driver does not protect you from things beyond your control, such as bad drivers.

Most accidents occur within 25 miles (40 km) of home. And the greatest number of serious injuries and deaths occur at speeds of less than 40 mph (65 km/h).

Safety belts are for everyone.

How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

This part is only for people of adult size.

Be aware that there are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and babies. If a child will be riding in your vehicle, see *Older Children on page 43* or *Infants and Young Children on page 46*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

First, you will want to know which restraint systems your vehicle has.

We will start with the driver position.

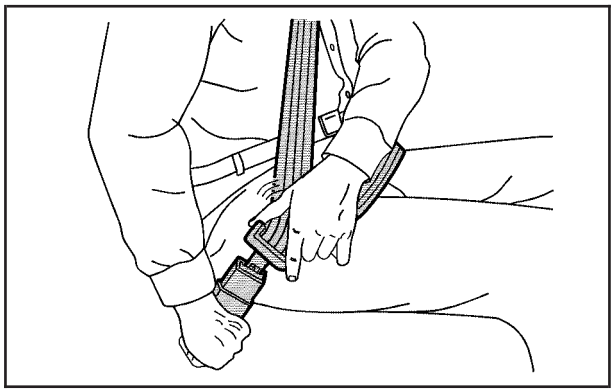
Driver Position

Lap-Shoulder Belt

The driver has a lap-shoulder belt. Here is how to wear it properly.

1. Close and lock the door.
2. Adjust the seat so you can sit up straight. To see how, see "Seats" in the Index.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



3. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

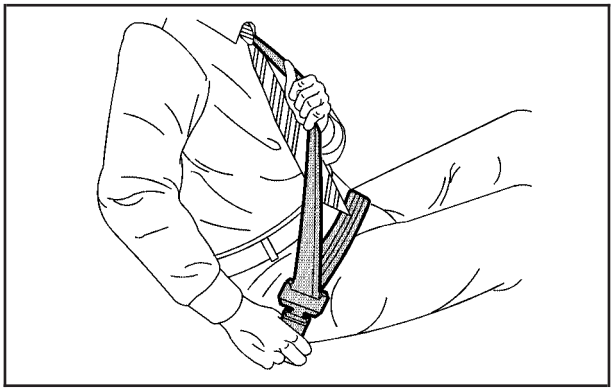
4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 42*.

   Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.

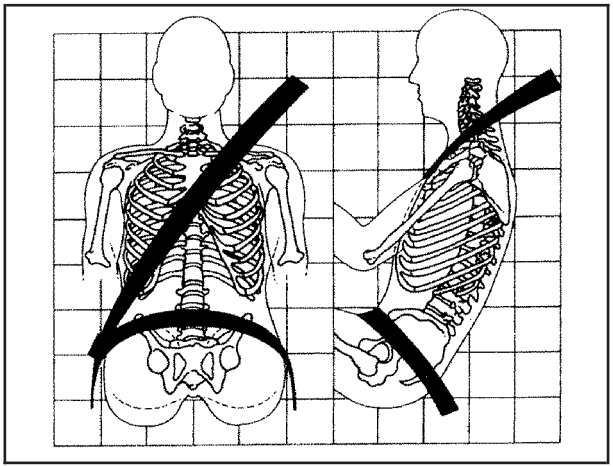
5. Move the shoulder belt height adjuster to the height that is right for you. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash. See *Shoulder Belt Height Adjustment on page 33*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



6. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

   It may be necessary to pull stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.

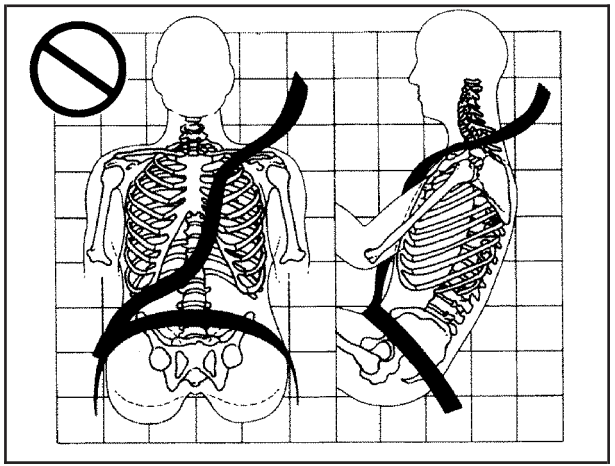


The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones. And you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The safety belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: What is wrong with this?



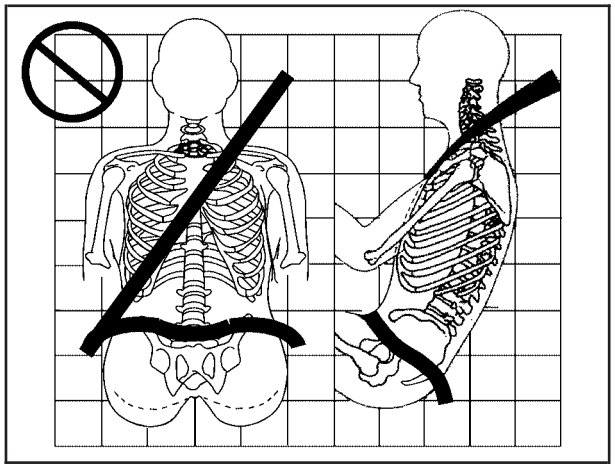
A: The shoulder belt is too loose. It will not give nearly as much protection this way.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit against your body.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: What is wrong with this?



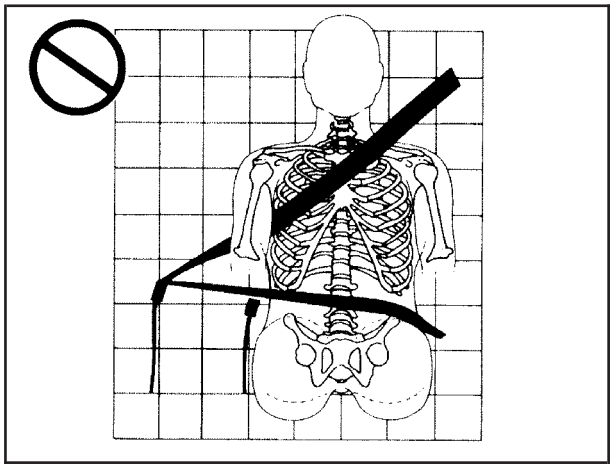
A: The lap belt is too loose. It will not give nearly as much protection this way.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your lap belt is too loose. In a crash, you could slide under the lap belt and apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The lap belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: What is wrong with this?



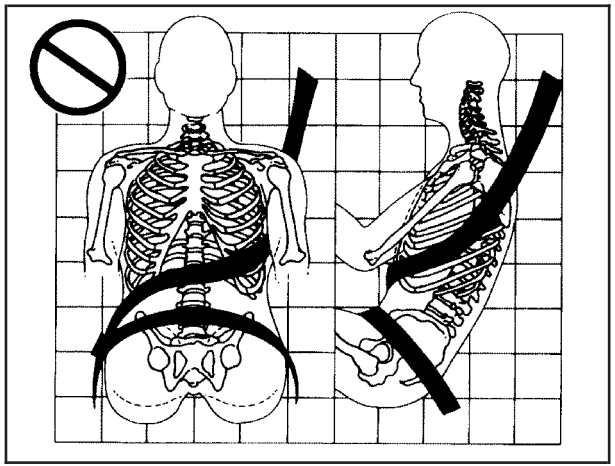
A: The belt is buckled in the wrong place.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place like this. In a crash, the belt would go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at the pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: What is wrong with this?



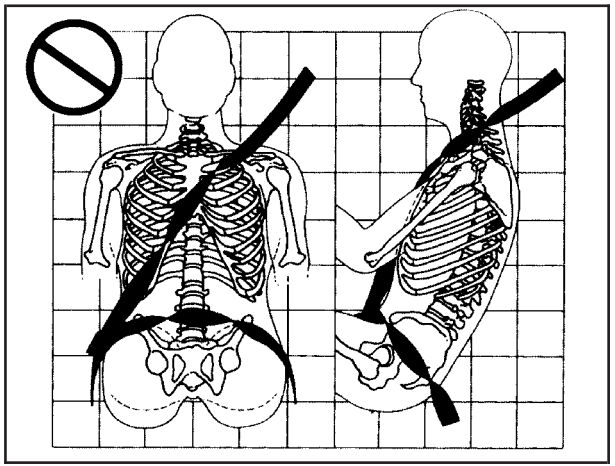
A: The shoulder belt is worn under the arm.
It should be worn over the shoulder at all times.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if you wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In a crash, your body would move too far forward, which would increase the chance of head and neck injury. Also, the belt would apply too much force to the ribs, which are not as strong as shoulder bones. You could also severely injure internal organs like your liver or spleen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: What is wrong with this?

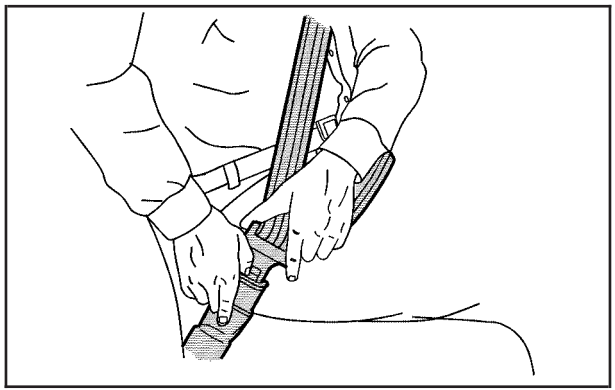


A: The belt is twisted across the body.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured by a twisted belt. In a crash, you would not have the full width of the belt to spread impact forces. If a belt is twisted, make it straight so it can work properly, or ask your dealer to fix it.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



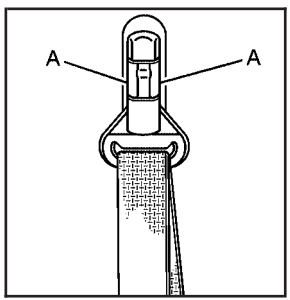
To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should go back out of the way. When the safety belt is not in use, slide the latch plate up the safety belt webbing. The latch plate should rest on the stitching on the safety belt, near the guide loop on the side wall.

Before you close the door, be sure the belt is out of the way. If you slam the door on it, you can damage both the belt and your vehicle.

Shoulder Belt Height Adjustment

Before you begin to drive, move the shoulder belt height adjuster to the height that is right for you.

Adjust the height so that the shoulder portion of the belt is centered on your shoulder. The belt should be away from your face and neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash.



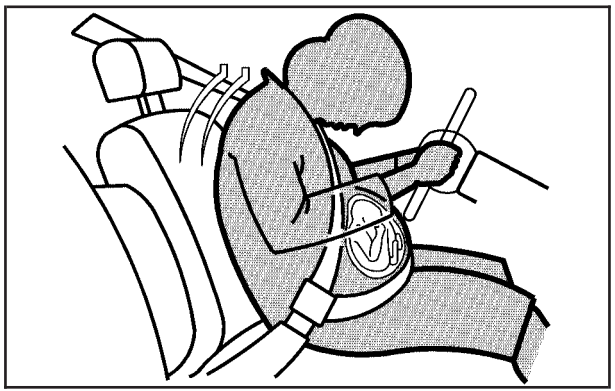
To move it up or down, squeeze the release buttons (A) together, or pull them toward you, and move the height adjuster to the desired position.

After you move the height adjuster to where you want it, try to move it down without squeezing the release buttons to make sure it has locked into position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.



A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

Right Front Passenger Position

To learn how to wear the right front passenger's safety belt properly, see *Driver Position on page 25*.

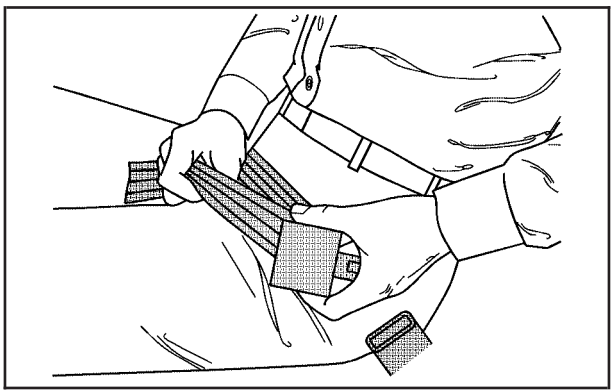
The right front passenger's safety belt works the same way as the driver's safety belt — except for one thing. If you ever pull the shoulder portion of the belt out all the way, you will engage the child restraint locking feature which may turn off the passenger's frontal airbag. If this happens, just let the belt go back all the way and start again.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

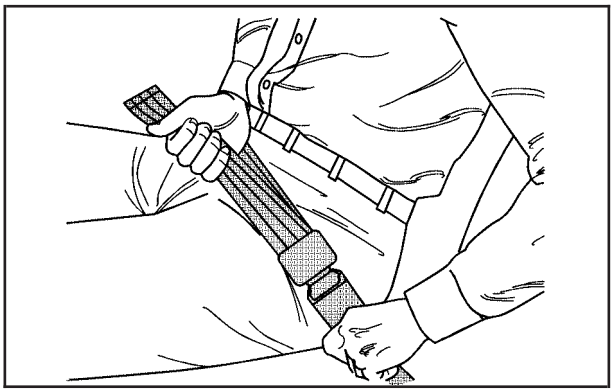
Center Front Passenger Position

Lap Belt

If your vehicle has a 60/40 split front seat, someone can sit in the center position.



When you sit in the center front seating position, you have a lap safety belt, which has no retractor. To make the belt longer, tilt the latch plate and pull it along the belt.



To make the belt shorter, pull its free end as shown until the belt is snug.

Buckle, position and release it the same way as the lap part of a lap-shoulder belt. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 42*.

Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

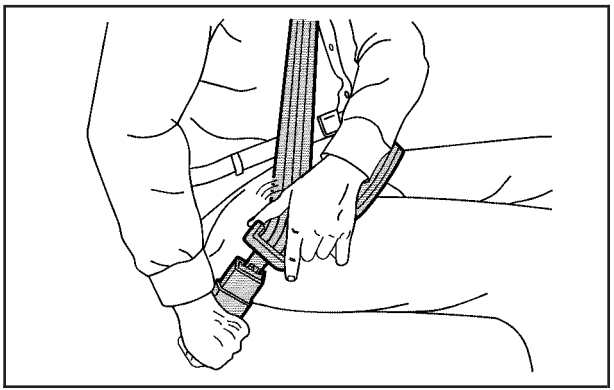
Rear Seat Passengers

It is very important for rear seat passengers to buckle up! Accident statistics show that unbelted people in the rear seat are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

Rear passengers who are not safety belted can be thrown out of the vehicle in a crash. And they can strike others in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts.

Lap-Shoulder Belt

All rear seating positions have lap-shoulder belts. Here is how to wear one properly.



1. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

   The shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

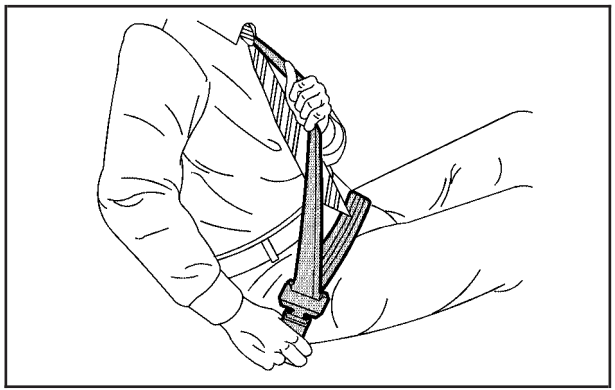
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

   When the shoulder belt is pulled out all the way, it will lock. If it does, let it go back all the way and start again.

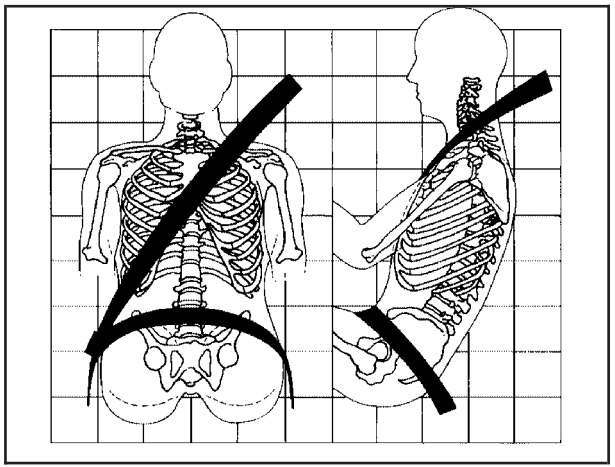
   If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 42*.

   Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



3. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder part.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones. And you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.

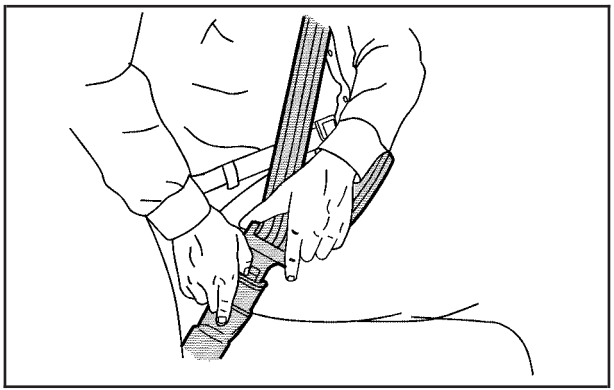
The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The safety belt locks if there is a sudden stop or a crash.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit against your body.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



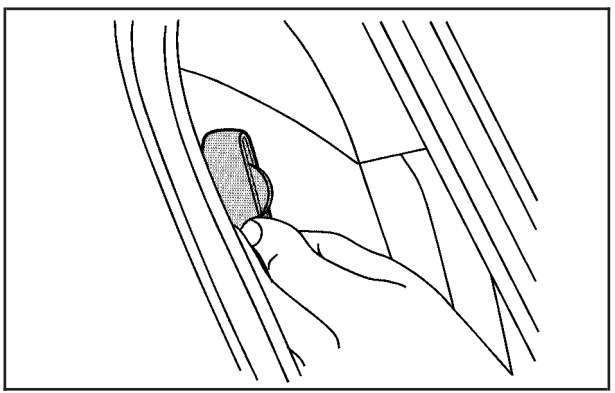
To unlatch the belt, just push the button on the buckle. For outboard seating positions, when the safety belt is not in use, slide the latch plate up the safety belt webbing. The latch plate should rest on the stitching on the safety belt, near the guide loop on the side wall.

Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides

Your vehicle may have rear shoulder belt comfort guides for the rear outside positions.

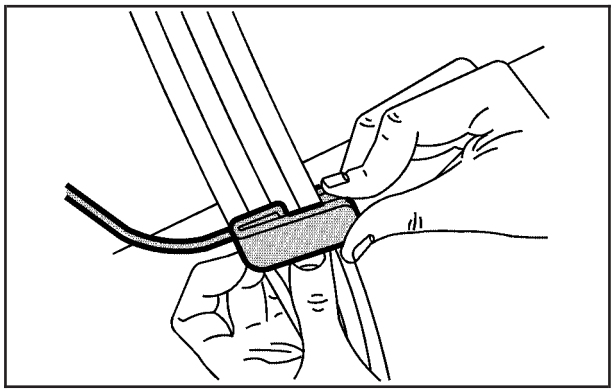
Rear shoulder belt comfort guides may provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

Here is how to install a comfort guide to the shoulder belt.

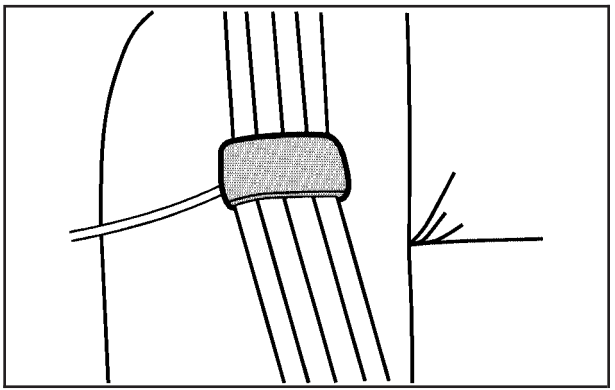


1. Slide the guide off of its storage clip located between the interior body and the seatback.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



2. Slide the guide under and past the belt. The elastic cord must be under the belt. Then, place the guide over the belt and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.

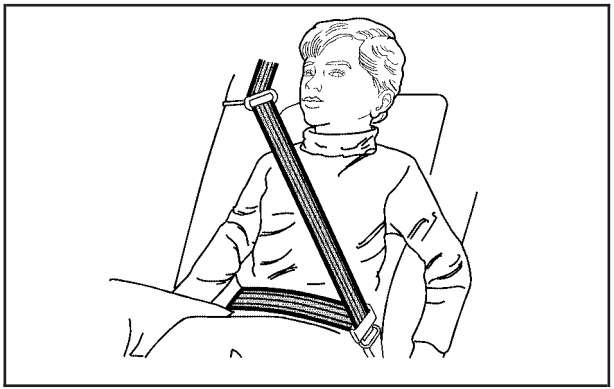


3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.



4. Buckle, position, and release the safety belt as described in *Rear Seat Passengers on page 36*. Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder.

To remove and store a comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so that you can take them out of the guide. Slide the guide back on its storage clip located between the interior body and the seatback.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Belt Pretensioners

Your vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for the driver and right front passenger. Although you cannot see them, they are part of the safety belt assembly. They help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal or near frontal crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met.

Pretensioners work only once. If they activate in a crash, you will need to get new ones, and probably other new parts for your safety belt system. See *Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash on page 95*.

Safety Belt Extender

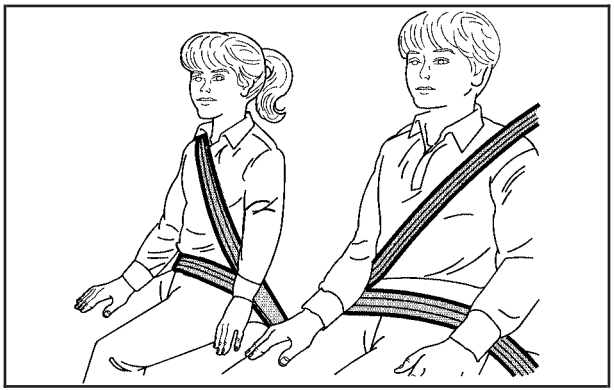
If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt is not long enough, your dealer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child seats. To wear it, just attach it to the regular safety belt. For more information see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

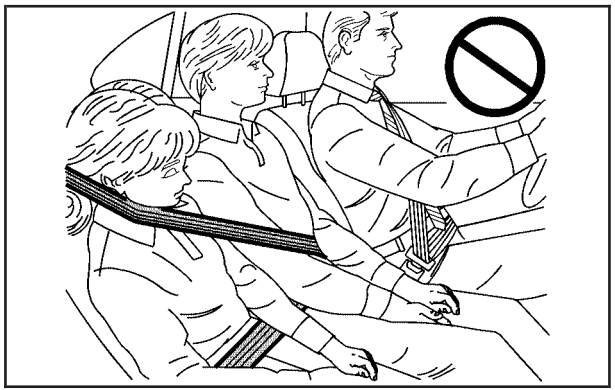
Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Here two children are wearing the same belt. The belt can not properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A belt must be used by only one person at a time.

Q: What if a child is wearing a lap-shoulder belt, but the child is so small that the shoulder belt is very close to the child's face or neck?

A: If the child is sitting in a seat next to a window, move the child toward the center of the vehicle. Also see *Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides on page 39*. If the child is sitting in the center rear seat passenger position, move the child toward the safety belt buckle. In either case, be sure that the shoulder belt still is on the child's shoulder, so that in a crash the child's upper body would have the restraint that belts provide.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Here a child is sitting in a seat that has a lap-shoulder belt, but the shoulder part is behind the child. If the child wears the belt in this way, in a crash the child might slide under the belt. The belt's force would then be applied right on the child's abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries.

Wherever the child sits, the lap portion of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the child's thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

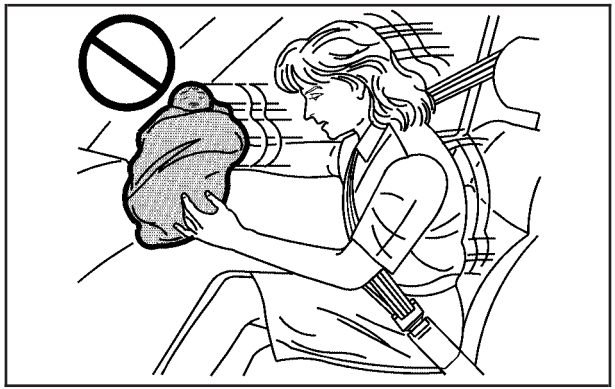
Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate restraints. Young children should not use the vehicle's adult safety belts alone, unless there is no other choice. Instead, they need to use a child restraint.

⚠ CAUTION:

People should never hold a baby in their arms while riding in a vehicle. A baby does not weigh much — until a crash. During a crash a baby will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it. For example, in a crash at only 25 mph (40 km/h), a 12 lb (5.5 kg) baby will suddenly become a 240 lb (110 kg) force on a person's arms. A baby should be secured in an appropriate restraint.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



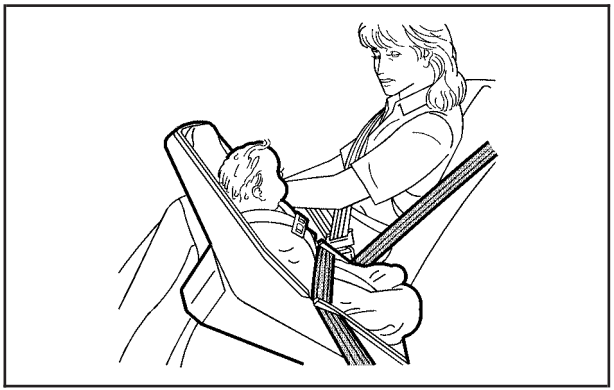
⚠ CAUTION:

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?

A: Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle's owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

⚠ CAUTION:

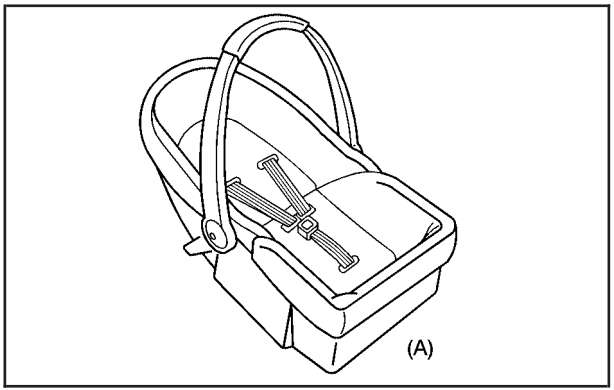
Newborn infants need complete support, including support for the head and neck. This is necessary because a newborn infant's neck is weak and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing seat settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants always should be secured in appropriate infant restraints.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

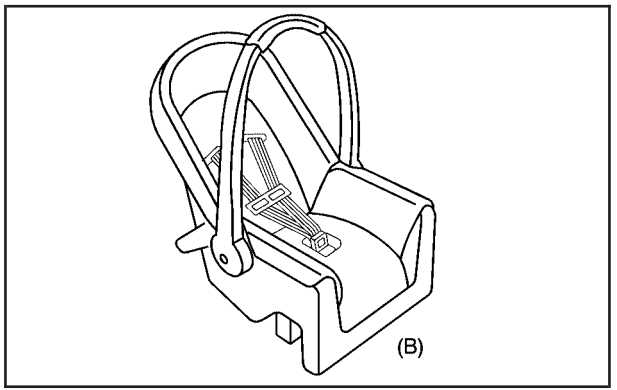
The body structure of a young child is quite unlike that of an adult or older child, for whom the safety belts are designed. A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. Young children always should be secured in appropriate child restraints.

Child Restraint Systems

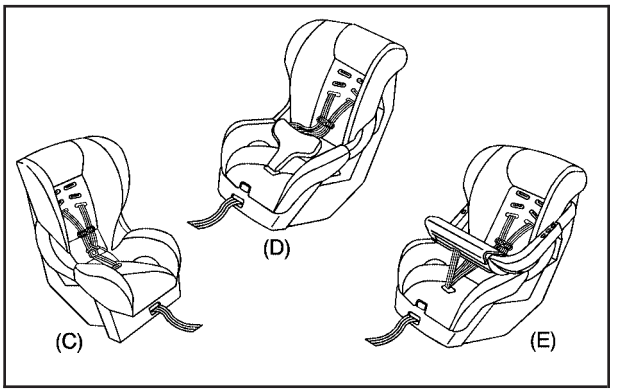


An infant car bed (A), a special bed made for use in a motor vehicle, is an infant restraint system designed to restrain or position a child on a continuous flat surface. Make sure that the infant's head rests toward the center of the vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

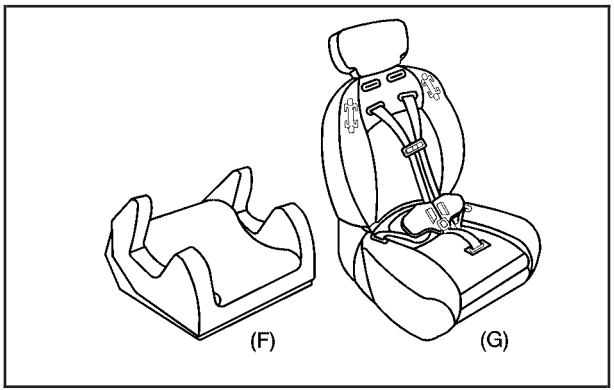


A rear-facing infant seat (B) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant. The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.



A forward-facing child seat (C-E) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness and also sometimes with surfaces such as T-shaped or shelf-like shields.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



A booster seat (F-G) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. Some booster seats have a shoulder belt positioner, and some high-back booster seats have a five-point harness. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

Q: How Should I Use a Child Restraint?

A: A child restraint system is any device designed for use in a motor vehicle to restrain, seat, or position children. A built-in child restraint system is a permanent part of the motor vehicle. An add-on child restraint system is a portable one, which is purchased by the vehicle's owner. To help reduce injuries, an add-on child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. With built-in or add-on child restraints, the child has to be secured within the child restraint.

When choosing an add-on child restraint, be sure the child restraint is designed to be used in a vehicle. If it is, it will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards. Then follow the instructions for the restraint. You may find these instructions on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Securing an Add-on Child Restraint in the Vehicle

⚠ CAUTION:

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Make sure the child restraint is properly installed in the vehicle using the vehicle's safety belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system.

See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 56* for more information. A child can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

There are several systems for securing the child within the child restraint. One system, the three-point harness, has straps that come down over each of the infant's shoulders and buckle together at the crotch. The five-point harness system has two shoulder straps, two hip straps, and a crotch strap. A shield may take the place of hip straps. A T-shaped shield has shoulder straps that are attached to a flat pad which rests low against the child's body. A shelf- or armrest-type shield has straps that are attached to a wide, shelf-like shield that swings up or to the side.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Make sure the child is properly secured, following the instructions that came with that restraint.

Because there are different systems, it is important to refer to the instructions that come with the restraint. A child can be endangered in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint.

Where to Put the Restraint

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. We recommend that child restraints be secured in a rear seat including an infant riding in a rear-facing infant seat, a child riding in a forward-facing child seat, and an older child riding in a booster seat.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

There is a label on your sun visor that says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger’s airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger’s frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat, even if the airbag is off.

If you need to secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

If your vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, never put a child in a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger seat unless passenger airbag status indicator shows off and the airbag is off. Here is why:

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. Be sure the airbag is off before using a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat position.

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be transported in vehicles with a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, whenever possible.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

If you need to secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a child restraint in the center front seat can be badly injured or killed by the right front passenger's airbag if it inflates. Never secure a child restraint in the center front seat. It is always better to secure a child restraint in the rear seat.

Do not use child restraints in the center front seat position. The restraints will not work properly.

Wherever you install a child restraint, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

The LATCH system holds a child restraint during driving or in a crash. This system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier. The LATCH system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint that are made for use with the LATCH system.

Make sure that a LATCH-compatible child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.

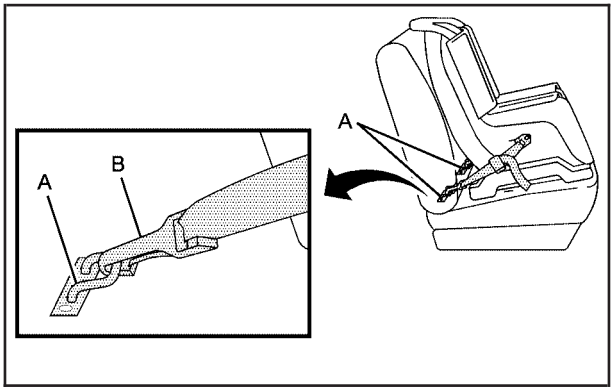
When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the safety belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether and anchor.

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint and its attachments. The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in your vehicle.

Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have lower anchors and attachments or top tether anchors and attachments.

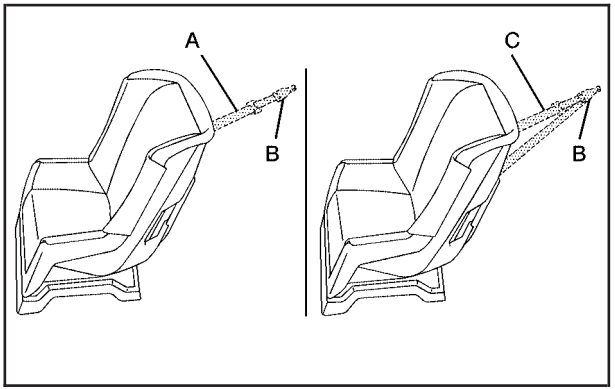
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (A) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (B).

Top Tether Anchor



A top tether (A, C) anchors the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (B) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.

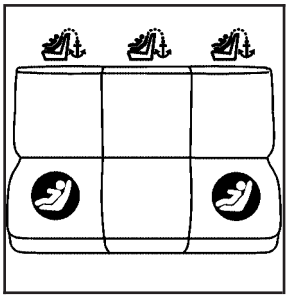
Your child restraint may have a single tether (A) or a dual tether (C). Either will have a single attachment (B) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Some child restraints that have a top tether are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached. In the United States, some child restraints also have a top tether. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

If the child restraint does not have a top tether, one can be obtained, in kit form, for many child restraints. Ask the child restraint manufacturer whether or not a kit is available.

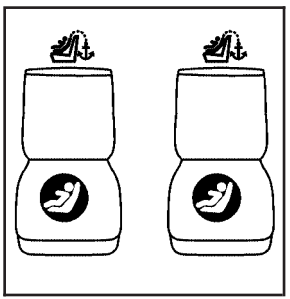
Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations



(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

(Lower Anchor): Seating positions with two lower anchors.

Crew Cab — Rear Seat

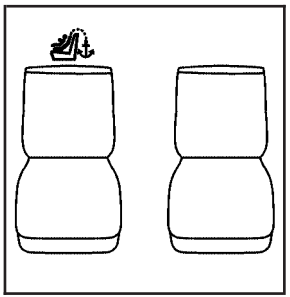


(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

(Lower Anchor): Seating positions with two lower anchors.

Extended Cab — Rear Seat

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



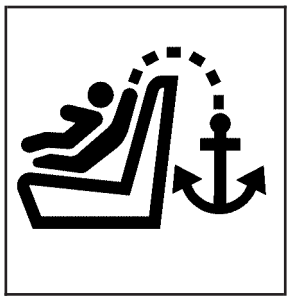
Front Seat — Regular and Extended Cab without Rear Seats

(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

For crew cab models, there are exposed metal lower anchors for each rear outboard seating position, located where the seatback meets the back of the seat cushion.

For extended cab models with rear seats, there are exposed metal lower anchors for each rear seating position, attached to the back wall, near the seat cushion.

To assist you in locating the lower anchors, place your hand in a palm-up position and reach up between the seat cushion and the seatback.

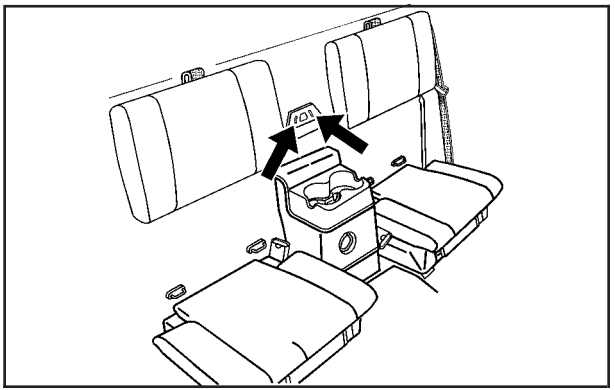


To assist you in locating the top tether anchors, the top tether anchor symbol is located on the trim cover.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Crew Cab

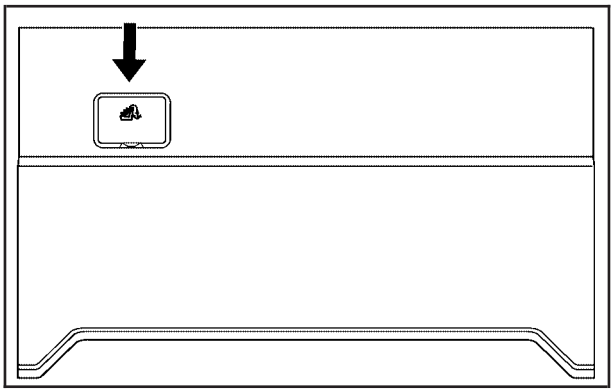
The top tether anchors in a crew cab model are located on the back wall behind each rear seating position. Be sure to use an anchor located on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.



Extended Cab — Rear Seat

The top tether anchors in an extended cab model are located on the center of the back wall behind a removable cover for the rear seating positions. Be sure to use an anchor located nearest to the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



Regular and Extended Cab without Rear Seats

For regular and extended cab models without rear seats, there is a top tether anchor located behind a removable cover on the back wall behind the right front passenger seat. You may have to pull the seatback forward to access the anchor.

Do not secure a child restraint in the right front passenger's position of a vehicle that has rear seats if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached. There is no place to attach the top tether in this position.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 53* for additional information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

⚠ CAUTION:

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to anchors, the restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Make sure that a LATCH-type child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.

⚠ CAUTION:

Each top tether anchor and lower anchor in the vehicle is designed to hold only one child restraint. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured if this happens. To help prevent injury to people and damage to your vehicle, attach only one child restraint per anchor.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

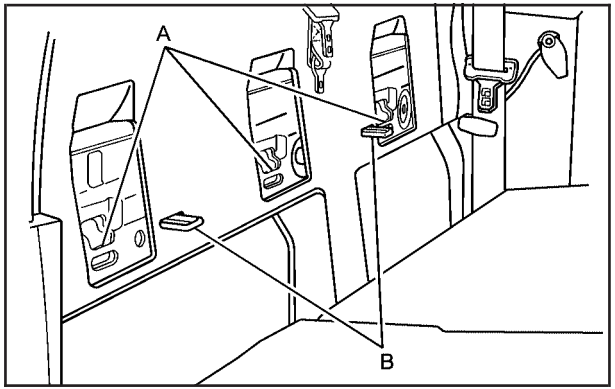
Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Secure any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, if your vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed. Be sure to follow the instructions of the child restraint manufacturer.

Notice: **Contact between the child restraint or the LATCH attachment parts and the vehicle's safety belt assembly may cause damage to these parts. Make sure when securing unused safety belts behind the child restraint that there is no contact between the child restraint or the LATCH attachment parts and the vehicle's safety belt assembly.**

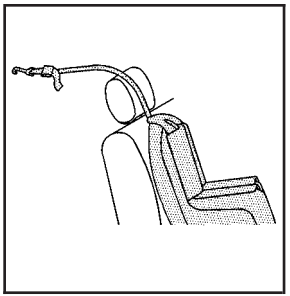
Folding an empty rear seat with the safety belts secured may cause damage to the safety belt or the seat. When removing the child restraint, always remember to return the safety belts to their normal, stowed position before folding the rear seat.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

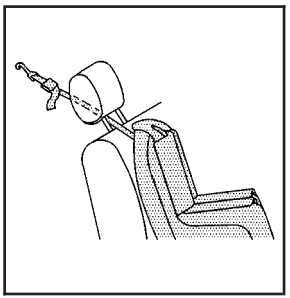
Crew Cab — Rear Seat



1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer's instructions recommends that the top tether be attached, attach the top tether to the top tether anchor (A). Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   2.1. Pull the seatback forward to access the top tether anchors (A). See *Rear Seat Operation (Extended Cab) on page 17* or *Rear Seat Operation (Crew Cab) on page 18*.
   2.2. Route the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:

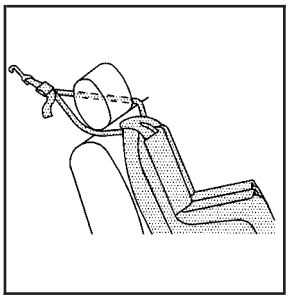


If the position you are using has a fixed head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the head restraint.



If the position you are using has an adjustable head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the head restraint and route the tether under the head restraint and in between the head restraint posts.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



If the position you are using has a fixed or adjustable head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the head restraint.

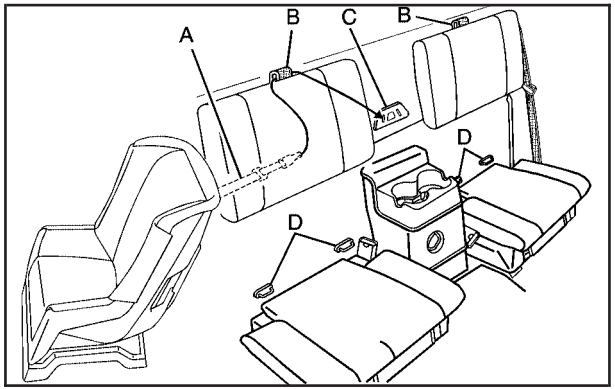
2.3. Attach the top tether to the anchor (A). Make sure that you secure the top tether to the top tether anchor and not to the seatback latch (B).

2.4. Push rearward on the seatback until it locks into its upright position. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is secured properly.

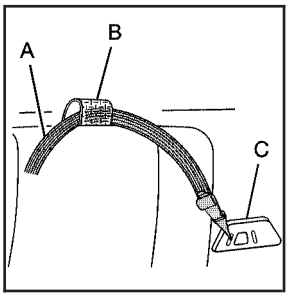
3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
   3.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.
   3.2. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.
4. Tighten the top tether.
5. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Extended Cab — Rear Seat



1. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
   1.1. Find the lower anchors (D) for the desired seating position.
   1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
   1.3. Attach the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors (D) in the vehicle. The child restraint instructions will show you how.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor (C). Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:



   2.1. Pull on the finger access tab to remove the cover to access the top tether anchors (C).
   2.2. Route the top tether (A) through the loop (B) at the top of the seatback to attach the top tether to the nearest top tether anchor (C).

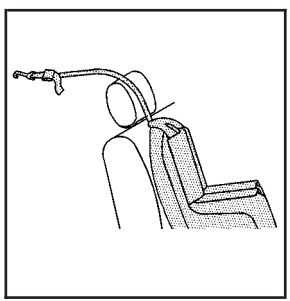
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Tighten the lower anchor attachments and the top tether. The child restraint instructions will show you how.
4. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

Front Seat — Regular/Extended Cab without Rear Seats

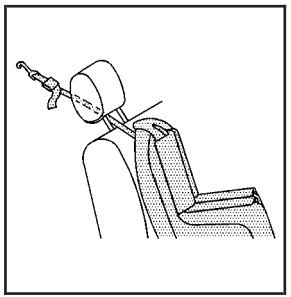
Your vehicle has a right front passenger's airbag and a passenger sensing system. The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag when an infant in a rear-facing infant seat or a small child in a forward-facing child restraint or booster seat is detected. See *Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position on page 71* and *Passenger Sensing System on page 86* for important safety information and additional information on installing a child restraint in the right front seat position.

1. See *Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position on page 71* for instructions on installing the child restraint using the safety belts.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer's instructions recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   2.1. Pull the seatback forward to access the top tether anchor. See *Seatback Latches on page 16*.
   2.2. Pull on the finger access tab to remove the cover to access the top tether anchor.
   2.3. Route the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:

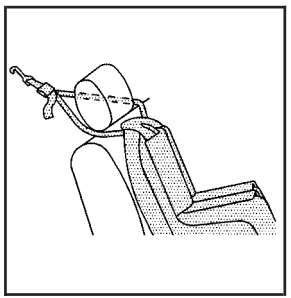


If the position you are using has a fixed head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the head restraint.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



If the position you are using has an adjustable head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the head restraint and route the tether under the head restraint and in between the head restraint posts.



If the position you are using has a fixed or adjustable head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the head restraint.

3. Attach and tighten the top tether according to your child restraint instructions.
4. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

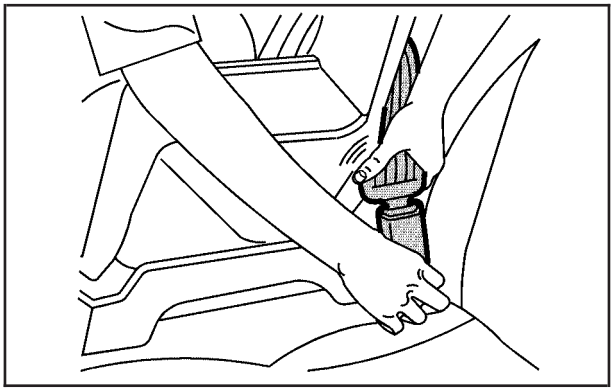
Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position

If your child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 56*.

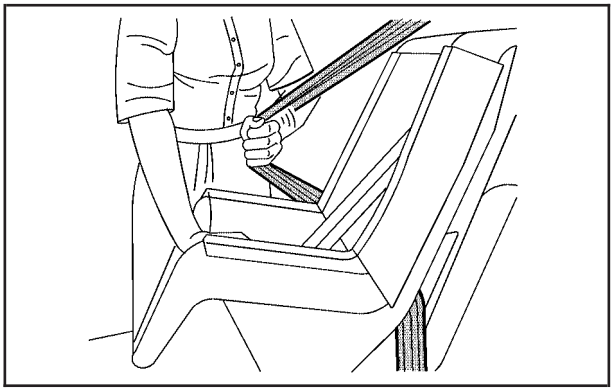
If your child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

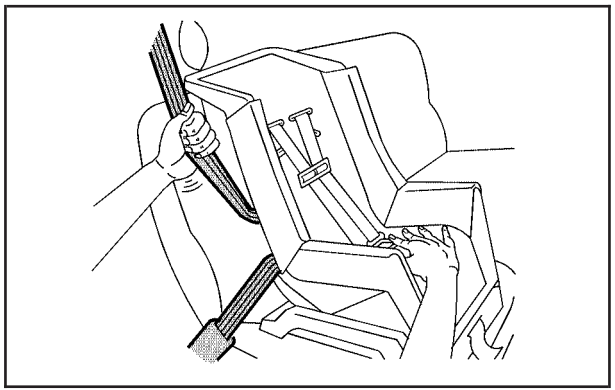


3. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



4. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.
5. If your child restraint has a top tether, attach the top tether to the top tether anchor. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 56*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. If you are using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
7. Tighten the top tether to the anchor. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 56*.
8. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, if the top tether is attached, disconnect it. Unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. The safety belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger.
For outboard seating positions, when the safety belt is not in use, slide the latch plate up the safety belt webbing. The latch plate should rest on the stitching on the safety belt, near the upper anchor on the side wall.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Securing a Child Restraint in the Center Front Seat Position

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a child restraint in the center front seat can be badly injured or killed by the right front passenger's airbag if it inflates. Never secure a child restraint in the center front seat. It is always better to secure a child restraint in the rear seat.

Do not use child restraints in this position.

Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position

Your vehicle has a right front passenger's airbag. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 53*.

In addition, your vehicle has a passenger sensing system. The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag when an infant in a rear-facing infant seat or a small child in a forward-facing child restraint or booster seat is detected. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 86* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 184* for more information on this including important safety information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

There is a label on your sun visor that says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger’s airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger’s frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat, even if the airbag is off.

If you need to secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

If your vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, never put a child in a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger seat unless the passenger airbag status indicator shows off and the airbag is off. Here is why:

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. Be sure the airbag is off before using a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat position.

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

that rear-facing child restraints be transported in vehicles with a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, whenever possible.

If you need to secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

If your child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 56*.

If your vehicle has rear seats, there is no top tether anchor at the right front seating position. Do not secure a child seat in this position if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be anchored. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 56* if the child restraint has a top tether.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

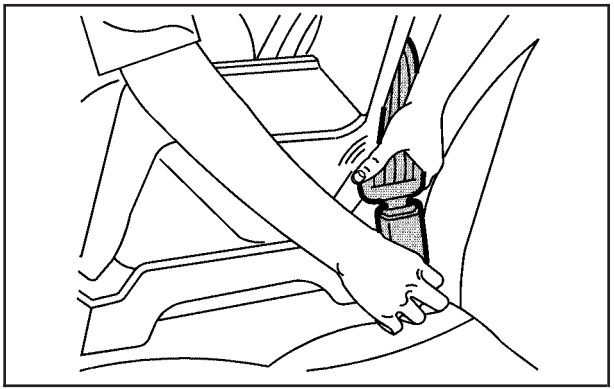
You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

1. Your vehicle has a right front passenger's frontal airbag. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 86*. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If your child restraint is forward-facing, move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the child restraint in this seat. See *Manual Seats on page 9* or *Power Seats on page 10*.

   When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal airbag, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you turn the ignition to ON or START. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 184*.

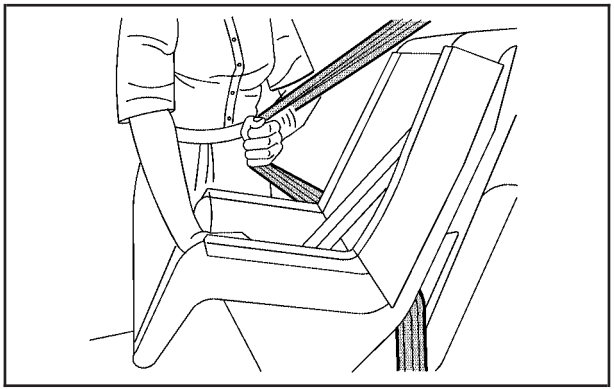
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.

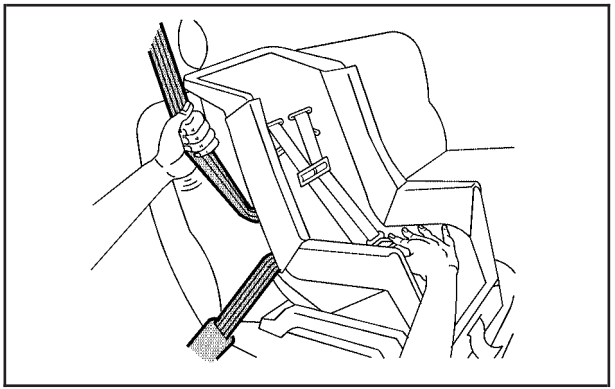
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



4. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS





5. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.
6. If your vehicle does not have rear seats and if your child restraint has a top tether, attach the top tether to the top tether anchor. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 56*.
7. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. If you are using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt. You should not be able to pull more of the belt from the retractor once the lock has been set.
8. Tighten the top tether to the anchor. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 56*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

9. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.
10. If the airbag is off, the off indicator on the instrument panel will be lit and stay lit when the key is turned to ON or START.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, turn the vehicle off. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the child restraint.

If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, check to make sure that the vehicle's seatback is not pressing the child restraint into the seat cushion. If this happens, slightly recline the vehicle's seatback and adjust the seat cushion if possible. Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint.

If the on indicator is still lit, secure the child in the child restraint in a rear seat position in the vehicle if one is available and check with your dealer.

To remove the child restraint, if the top tether is attached, disconnect it. Unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. The safety belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger. When the safety belt is not in use, slide the latch plate up the safety belt webbing. The latch plate should rest on the stitching on the safety belt, near the upper anchor on the side wall.

Airbag System

Your vehicle has a frontal airbag for the driver and a frontal airbag for the right front passenger. Your vehicle may also have roof-mounted side impact airbags. Roof-mounted side impact airbags are available for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver and for the right front passenger and the passenger seated directly behind that passenger.

If your vehicle has roof-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the airbag covering on the ceiling near the side windows.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt — even if you have airbags. Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are "supplemental restraints" to the safety belts. All airbags are designed to work with safety belts but do not replace them.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

Frontal airbags for the driver and right front passenger are designed to deploy in moderate to severe frontal and near frontal crashes. They are not designed to inflate in rollover, rear crashes, or in many side crashes. And, for some unrestrained occupants, frontal airbags may provide less protection in frontal crashes than more forceful airbags have provided in the past.

Roof-mounted side impact airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe crashes where something hits the side of your vehicle. They are not designed to inflate in frontal, in rollover or in rear crashes. Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

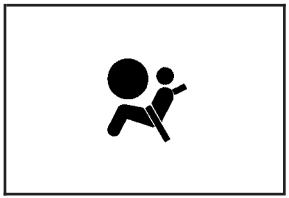
⚠ CAUTION:

Both frontal and side impact airbags inflate with great force, faster than the blink of an eye. If you are too close to an inflating airbag, as you would be if you were leaning forward, it could seriously injure you. Safety belts help keep you in position for airbag inflation before and during a crash. Always wear your safety belt even with frontal airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door.

⚠ CAUTION:

Anyone who is up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer the best protection for adults, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in your vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children on page 43* or *Infants and Young Children on page 46*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 183* for more information.

Where Are the Airbags?

The driver's airbag is in the middle of the steering wheel.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The right front passenger's airbag is in the instrument panel on the passenger's side.

If your vehicle has a roof-mounted side impact airbag for the driver and the person seated directly behind the driver, it is located in the ceiling above the side windows.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If your vehicle has a roof-mounted side impact airbag for the right front passenger and the person seated directly behind that passenger, it is located in the ceiling above the side windows.

⚠ CAUTION:

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the bag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering. If your vehicle has side impact airbags, never secure anything to the roof of your vehicle by routing the rope or tie down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating side impact airbag will be blocked. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

The driver's and right front passenger's frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes. But they are designed to inflate only if the impact exceeds a predetermined deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds take into account a variety of desired deployment and non-deployment events and are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants. Whether your frontal airbags will or should deploy is not based on how fast your vehicle is traveling. It depends largely on what you hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly your vehicle slows down.

In addition, your vehicle has "dual stage" frontal airbags, which adjust the restraint according to crash severity. Your vehicle has electronic frontal sensors which help the sensing system distinguish between a moderate and a more severe frontal impact. For moderate frontal impacts, these airbags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs.

If the front of your vehicle goes straight into a wall that doesn't move or deform, the threshold level for the reduced deployment is about 8 to 16 mph (12.9 to 25.7 km/h), and the threshold level for a full deployment is about 19 to 24 mph (30.6 to 38.6 km/h) if the other sensors do not over-ride this. The threshold level can vary, however, with specific vehicle design, so that it can be somewhat above or below this range.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds. For example:

- If the vehicle hits a stationary object, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a moving object.
- If the vehicle hits an object that deforms, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits an object that does not deform.
- If the vehicle hits a narrow object (like a pole), the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a wide object (like a wall).
- If the vehicle goes into an object at an angle, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle goes straight into the object.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Frontal airbags (driver and right front passenger) are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

If your vehicle has side impact airbags, it has electronic side sensors. The side impact airbags are intended to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes. A side impact airbag will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed "threshold level." The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design. Side impact airbags are not intended to inflate in frontal or near-frontal impacts, rollovers or rear impacts. Both side impact airbags will deploy when either side of the vehicle is struck.

Your vehicle has seat position sensors which enable the sensing system to monitor the position of the driver's seat and the right front passenger's seat. Seat position sensors provide information that is used to determine if the airbags should deploy at a reduced level or at full deployment.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. For frontal airbags, inflation is determined by what the vehicle hits, the angle of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down in frontal or near-frontal impacts. For side impact airbags, inflation is determined by the location and severity of the impact.

The airbag system is designed to work properly under a wide range of conditions, including off-road usage. Observe safe driving speeds, especially on rough terrain. As always, wear your safety belt. See *Off-Road Driving on page 260* for more tips on off-road driving.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In an impact of sufficient severity, the airbag sensing system detects that the vehicle is in a crash. The sensing system triggers a release of gas from the inflator, which inflates the airbag. The inflator, airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag modules inside the steering wheel and in the instrument panel in front of the right front passenger. For vehicles with roof-mounted side impact airbags, there are also airbag modules in the ceiling of the vehicle, near the side windows.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. But the frontal airbags would not help you in many types of collisions, including rollovers, rear impacts, and many side impacts, primarily because an occupant's motion is not toward the airbag. Side impact airbags would not help you in many types of collisions, including many frontal or near frontal collisions, rollovers, and rear impacts.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts, and then only in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal collisions for the driver's and right front passenger's frontal airbags, and only in moderate to severe side collisions for vehicles with side impact airbags.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates?

After a frontal airbag inflates, it quickly deflates, so quickly that some people may not even realize the airbag inflated. Roof-mounted side impact airbags may still be at least partially inflated minutes after the vehicle comes to rest. Some components of the airbag module — the steering wheel hub for the driver's airbag, the instrument panel for the right front passenger's airbag or the ceiling of your vehicle near the side windows — may be hot for a short time. The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the front windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

Your vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors (if your vehicle has power door locks), turn the interior lamps on, flash the hazard warning flashers, and turn off the radio when the airbag inflates. You can lock the doors again by using the door lock. The interior lamps and hazard warning flashers will deactivate after approximately 15 minutes. You can use the radio controls to adjust the radio.

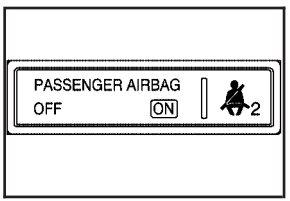
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

In many crashes severe enough to inflate an airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the right front passenger airbag.

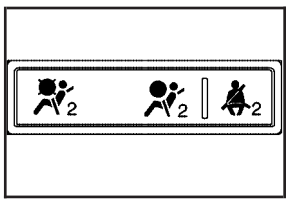
- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- Your vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data Recorders on page 476*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on your airbag system. Improper service can mean that your airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

Passenger Sensing System

Your vehicle has a passenger sensing system. The passenger airbag status indicator on the instrument panel will be visible when you turn your ignition key to ON or START. The words ON and OFF or the symbol for on and off, will be visible during the system check.



United States



Canada

When the system check is complete, either the word ON or the word OFF, or the symbol for on or the symbol for off will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 184*.

The passenger sensing system will turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag under certain conditions. The driver's airbags are not part of the passenger sensing system.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the right front passenger's seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. We recommend that child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including an infant riding in a rear-facing infant seat, a child riding in a forward-facing child seat and an older child riding in a booster seat.

There is a label on your sun visor that says, "Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front." This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat, even if the airbag is off.

If you need to secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If your vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, never put a child in a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger seat unless the passenger airbag status indicator shows off and the airbag is off. Here is why:

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. Be sure the airbag is off before using a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat position.

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal airbag if the system

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be transported in vehicles with a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, whenever possible.

If you need to secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag if:

- The right front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat.
- The system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint.
- The system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat.
- A right front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- The right front passenger seat is occupied by a smaller person, such as a child who has outgrown child restraints.
- Or, if there is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger's frontal airbag has been turned off by the passenger sensing system, the off indicator on the instrument panel will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is off.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, turn the vehicle off. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the child restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's directions and refer to *Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position on page 71*.

If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, check to make sure that the vehicle's seatback is not pressing the child restraint into the seat cushion. If this happens, slightly recline the vehicle's seatback and adjust the seat cushion if possible. Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint.

If the on indicator is still lit, secure the child in the child restraint in a rear seat position in the vehicle if one is available and check with your dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the right front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the right front passenger's seat. When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbag to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is active.

For some children who have outgrown child restraints and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in your vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

If a person of adult-size is sitting in the right front passenger's seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens, turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the fully upright position, then sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.

Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and then enable the passenger's airbag.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light in the instrument panel cluster ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. If this ever happens, have the vehicle serviced promptly, because an adult-size person sitting in the right front passenger's seat may not have the protection of the frontal airbag. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 183* for more on this, including important safety information.

Aftermarket equipment, such as seat covers, can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. You may want to consider not using seat covers or other aftermarket equipment if your vehicle has the passenger sensing system. See *Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 93* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

⚠ CAUTION:

Stowing of articles under the passenger's seat or between the passenger's seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how your vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around your vehicle. You do not want the system to inflate while someone is working on your vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing your vehicle and the airbag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 482*.

⚠ CAUTION:

For up to 10 seconds, after the ignition is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

The airbag system does not need regular maintenance.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Q: Is there anything I might add to the front or sides of the vehicle that could keep the airbags from working properly?

A: Yes. If you add things that change your vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, they may keep the airbag system from working properly. Also, the airbag system may not work properly if you relocate any of the airbag sensors. If you have any questions about this, you should contact Customer Assistance before you modify your vehicle. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 464*.

Q: Because I have a disability, I have to get my vehicle modified. How can I find out whether this will affect my airbag system?

A: Changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, ceiling headliner, ceiling and pillar garnish trim, roof-mounted airbag modules, or airbag wiring can affect the operation of the airbag system. If you have questions, call Customer Assistance. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 464*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Restraint System Check

Checking the Restraint Systems

Now and then, make sure the safety belt reminder light and all your belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors and anchorages are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. See *Care of Safety Belts on page 427* for more information.

Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Also look for any opened or broken airbag covers, and have them repaired or replaced. The airbag system does not need regular maintenance.

Notice: **If you damage the covering for the driver's or the right front passenger's airbag, or the side impact airbag covering (if equipped) on the ceiling near the side windows, the airbag may not work properly. You may have to replace the airbag module in the steering wheel, both the airbag module and the instrument panel for the right front passenger's airbag, or side impact airbag module and ceiling covering for roof-mounted side impact airbags (if equipped.) Do not open or break the airbag coverings.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash

⚠ CAUTION:

A crash can damage the restraint systems in your vehicle. A damaged restraint system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure your restraint systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If you have had a crash, do you need new belts or LATCH system parts?

After a very minor collision, nothing may be necessary. But if the belts were stretched, as they would be if worn during a more severe crash, then you need new parts.

If the LATCH system was being used during a more severe crash, you may need new LATCH system parts.

If belts are cut or damaged, replace them. Collision damage also may mean you will need to have LATCH system, safety belt or seat parts repaired or replaced. New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the belt or LATCH system was not being used at the time of the collision.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See the part on the airbag system earlier in this section.

If the frontal airbags inflate you will also need to replace the driver and front passenger's safety belt retractor assembly. Be sure to do so. Then the new retractor assembly will be there to help protect you in a collision.

After a crash you may need to replace the driver and front passenger's safety belt retractor assemblies, even if the frontal airbags have not deployed. The driver and front passenger's safety belt retractor assemblies contain the safety belt pretensioners. Have your safety belt pretensioners checked if your vehicle has been in a collision, or if your airbag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 183*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTES

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 2 Features and Controls

Keys 99
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 101
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 102

Doors and Locks 104
- Door Locks 104
- Power Door Locks 105
- Programmable Automatic Door Locks 106
- Rear Door Security Locks (Crew Cab) 106
- Lockout Protection 107
- Rear Doors (Extended Cab) 107
- Tailgate 108

Windows 110
- Manual Windows 110
- Power Windows 111
- Sliding Rear Window 112
- Sun Visors 112

Theft-Deterrent Systems 112
- Content Theft-Deterrent 113
- Passlock® 114

Starting and Operating Your Vehicle 115
- New Vehicle Break-In 115
- Ignition Positions 116
- Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 117
- Starting the Engine 118
- Engine Coolant Heater 119
- Automatic Transmission Operation 120
- Manual Transmission Operation 124
- Four-Wheel Drive 126
- Parking Brake 130
- Shifting Into Park (P) (Automatic Transmission) 132
- Shifting Out of Park (P) (Automatic Transmission) 134
- Parking Your Vehicle (Manual Transmission) 134
- Parking Over Things That Burn 135
- Engine Exhaust 136
- Running the Engine While Parked 137

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 2 Features and Controls

Mirrors 138
- Manual Rearview Mirror 138
- Manual Rearview Mirror with OnStar® 138
- Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display 139
- Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with Compass and Temperature Display 142
- Outside Manual Mirrors 145
- Outside Power Mirrors 145
- Outside Convex Mirror 146

OnStar® System 147

Storage Areas 150
- Glove Box 150
- Cupholder(s) 150
- Front Armrest Storage Area 151
- Assist Handles 151
- Rear Storage Area 151

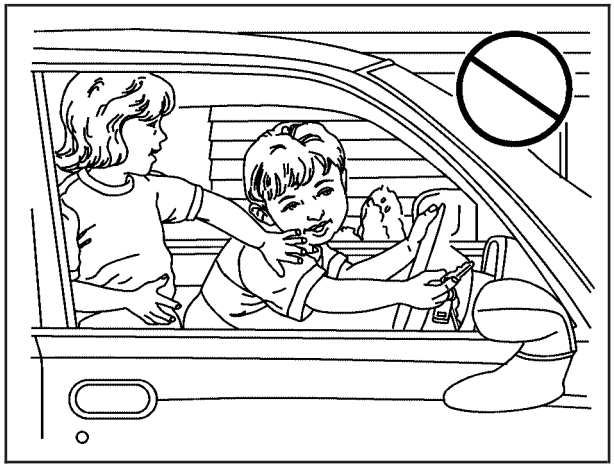
Sunroof 153

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

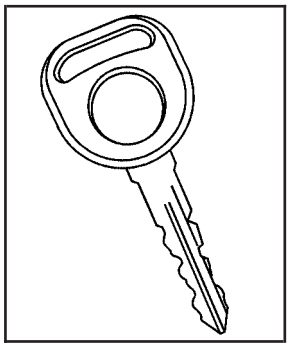
Keys

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The children or others could be badly injured or even killed. Do not leave the keys in a vehicle with children.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



There is a double-sided key that can be used for the ignition, all door locks, and the tailgate.

When a new vehicle is delivered, the dealer provides the owner with a pair of identical keys and a key code number.

The key code number tells your dealer or a qualified locksmith how to make extra keys. Keep this number in a safe place. If you lose your keys, you will be able to have new ones made easily using this number. Your dealer should also have this number.

Notice: **If you ever lock your keys in your vehicle, you may have to damage the vehicle to get in. Be sure you have spare keys.**

If you ever do get locked out of your vehicle call the GM Roadside Assistance Center. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 470*.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

If the vehicle has the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system, it operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

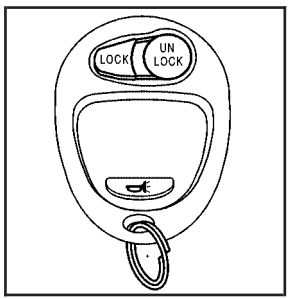
At times you may notice a decrease in range. This is normal for any RKE system. If the transmitter does not work or if you have to stand closer to your vehicle for the transmitter to work, try this:

- Check the distance. You may be too far from your vehicle. You may need to stand closer during rainy or snowy weather.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal. Take a few steps to the left or right, hold the transmitter higher, and try again.
- Check to determine if battery replacement is necessary. See “Battery Replacement” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 102*.
- If you are still having trouble, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

If your vehicle has this feature you can lock and unlock your doors and disarm or arm your theft-deterrent system from about 3 feet (1 m) up to 30 feet (9 m) away using the remote keyless entry transmitter. See *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 113* for additional information.



UNLOCK: Press this button to unlock the driver's door and turn on the interior lamps. The parking lamps may also flash, and the horn may chirp, when this button is pressed.

Press the unlock button again within three seconds and all of the doors will unlock.

LOCK: Press this button to lock all the doors. The parking lamps may also flash and the horn may chirp when this button is pressed.

If a door is open or ajar when the lock button is pressed, the horn will chirp several times to let you know the doors did not lock and the content theft-deterrent system is not armed. Pressing the lock button again while the horn is chirping or within three seconds after the horn stops sounding, the doors will lock but the content theft-deterrent system will not arm until the opened door is closed.

You can program different feedback modes through the Driver Information Center (DIC). To program the feedback modes, see "Remote Keyless Entry Feedback" under *DIC Controls and Displays on page 196*.

(Panic): Press this button to make the horn sound and the headlamps and taillamps flash for up to 30 seconds. To turn them off again, do one of these three things: wait for 30 seconds; press the panic button again; or start the vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Matching Transmitter(s) to Your Vehicle

Each remote keyless entry transmitter is coded to prevent another transmitter from unlocking your vehicle. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased through your dealer. Remember to bring any remaining transmitters with you when you go to your dealer. When the dealer matches the replacement transmitter to your vehicle, any remaining transmitters must also be matched. Once your dealer has coded the new transmitter, the lost transmitter will not unlock your vehicle. Each vehicle can have a maximum of four transmitters matched to it.

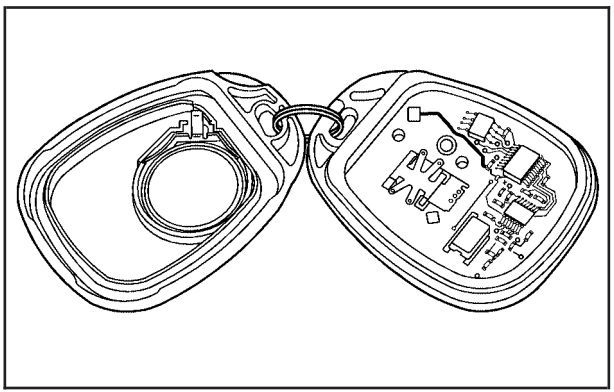
Battery Replacement

Under normal use, the battery in your remote keyless entry transmitter should last about two years.

You can tell the battery is weak if the transmitter will not work at the normal range in any location. If you have to get close to your vehicle before the transmitter works, it is probably time to change the battery.

Notice: **When replacing the battery, use care not to touch any of the circuitry. Static from your body transferred to these surfaces may damage the transmitter.**

To replace the battery, do the following:



1. Insert a thin coin, or similar object, in the slot between the covers of the transmitter housing. Gently pry the transmitter apart.
2. Remove and replace the battery with a three-volt CR2032 or equivalent battery.
3. Align the covers and snap them together.
4. Check the operation of the transmitter.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Doors and Locks

Door Locks

⚠ CAUTION:

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- **Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. You increase the chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash if the doors are not locked. So, wear safety belts properly and lock the doors whenever you drive.**

CAUTION: (Continued)

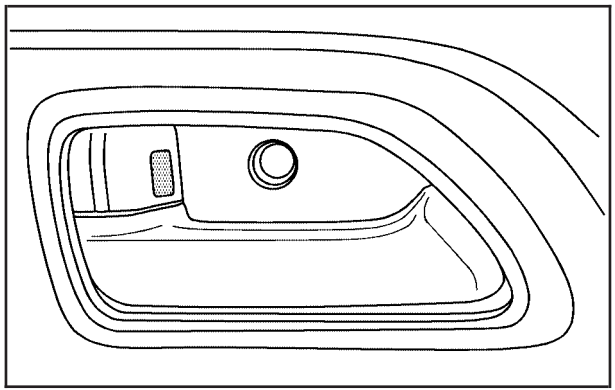
CAUTION: (Continued)

- **Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock your vehicle whenever you leave it.**
- **Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop your vehicle. Locking your doors can help prevent this from happening.**

There are several ways to lock and unlock your vehicle.

To lock or unlock the door from the outside, use the key in the driver's or front passenger's door or press the lock or unlock button on the remote keyless entry (RKE) transmitter.

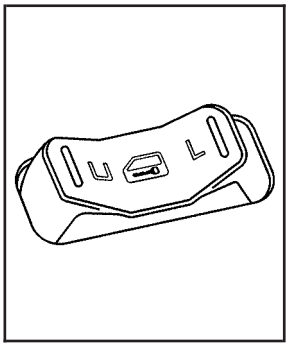
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



To lock a door from the inside, push the manual lever on the door forward. To unlock a door from the inside, push the lever on the door rearward.

You will see a colored area on the lever when the door is unlocked.

Power Door Locks



Driver's Switch Shown, Front Passenger's Switch Similar

If your vehicle has power door locks, the switches are located on the driver's and the front passenger's armrests.

Press L (lock) to lock all the doors at once. To unlock all the doors, press U (unlock).

On crew cab models, use the manual door lock lever on each rear door to lock or unlock the doors from the rear seating areas.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Programmable Automatic Door Locks

If your vehicle has power door locks and the remote keyless entry system, it has an automatic lock/unlock feature.

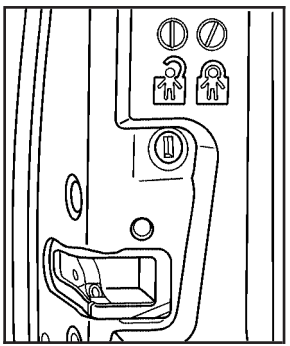
If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it is programmed from the factory to lock all doors automatically when the shift lever is moved out of PARK (P). All the doors will unlock when the shift lever is moved back into PARK (P).

If your vehicle has a manual transmission, it is programmed from the factory to lock all the doors when the vehicle speed is greater than 15 mph (24 km/h). The doors will unlock when the key is removed from the ignition.

To change the automatic door lock and unlock settings, see “Automatic Door Locks” under *DIC Controls and Displays on page 196*.

Rear Door Security Locks (Crew Cab)

If your vehicle is a crew cab model, it may have rear door security locks. With this feature, you can lock the rear doors so they cannot be opened from the inside.



The rear door security lock is located on the inside edge of each rear door below the security lock label.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

To engage the security locks, do the following:

1. Open one of the rear doors.
2. Using your ignition key, turn the lock to the horizontal position.
3. Close the door.
4. Repeat these steps on the other rear door.

If you want to open a rear door when the security lock is on, unlock the door and open the door from the outside.

To disengage the security locks, do the following:

1. Open one of the rear doors.
2. Using your ignition key, turn the lock to the vertical position.
3. Close the door.
4. Repeat these steps on the other rear door.

Lockout Protection

If you have power door locks, this feature protects you from locking your key in the vehicle when the key is in the ignition and a door is open.

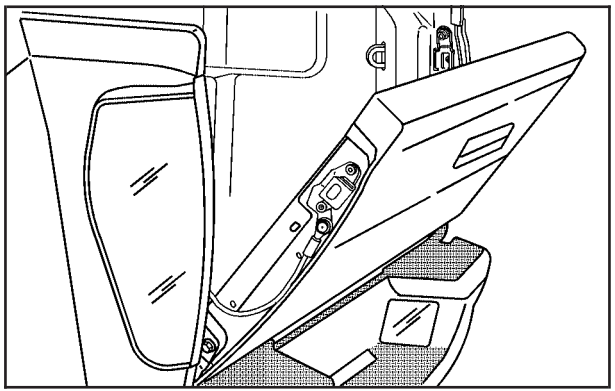
If the power door lock switch is pressed when a door is open and the key is in the ignition, all of the doors will lock and then the driver's door will unlock.

Rear Doors (Extended Cab)

To open a rear door, open the front door. Then, use the handle located on the front edge of the rear door panel to open it. You must close the rear door before closing the front door.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tailgate



You can open the tailgate by pulling up on the outside handle while pulling the tailgate down.

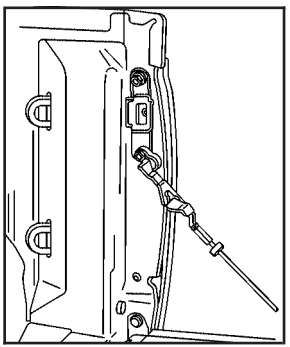
When you put the tailgate back up, be sure it latches securely.

You can lock the tailgate using your ignition key. Turn the key counterclockwise to lock the tailgate. Turn the key clockwise to unlock the tailgate.

Removing the Tailgate

Follow these steps if you want to remove the tailgate:

1. With the tailgate fully open, lift up slightly on the entire tailgate assembly.



2. Remove the retaining cables from both sides of the tailgate by pulling the clips away from the bolt heads while pushing the cable bracket forward.

When the larger part of the hole on the bracket is over the bolt, slide the bracket off of the bolt.

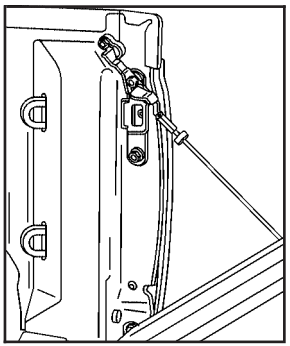
3. With the tailgate partially down, lift up on the passenger's side and pull the tailgate toward you, then move the tailgate to the right to release the driver's side. You can then remove the entire tailgate assembly.

Reverse the procedure to reinstall the tailgate. Make sure it is secure.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

To partially lower the tailgate do the following:

1. With the tailgate fully open, lift up slightly on the entire tailgate assembly.



Tailgate Partially Down

2. Remove the retaining cable from the passenger side of the tailgate by pulling the clip away from the bolt head while pushing the cable bracket forward.

   When the larger part of the hole on the bracket is over the bolt, slide the bracket off of the bolt.

3. Slide the lower end fitting onto the top bolt. The tailgate will now stay in the partially opened position.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for the driver side.

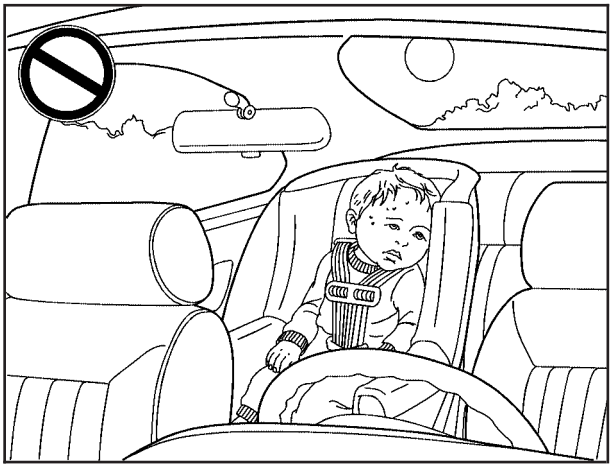
If you would like to close the tailgate, the bracket cannot be in the partially opened position and must be anchored on the bottom bolt, using the top position on the bracket.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Windows

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.

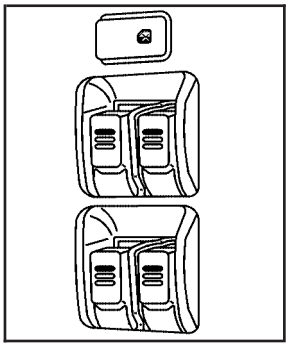


Manual Windows

On a vehicle with manual windows, use the handle on each door to open and close each window.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Windows



Crew Cab Switches Shown

The power window switches for all windows are located on the driver's door armrest. In addition, each passenger's door has its own switch.

The power windows will work when the ignition is in ACC (Accessory) or ON or while Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 117*.

Pull the front of the switch up to raise the window. Press the front of the switch down to lower the window.

Do not hold all four power window switches down for several seconds after the windows have been completely lowered or raised, because the vehicle may blow a fuse.

Express-Down Windows

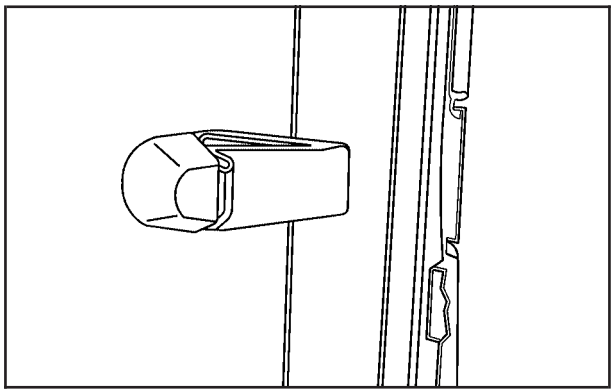
The driver's window has an express-down feature that allows the window to be lowered fully without continuously holding the switch. Press the front of the switch past the first position to activate the express-down mode. The express-down mode can be canceled at any time by pulling up on the switch.

Window Lockout

(Window Lockout): If you have a crew cab vehicle with power windows, you will also have a window lockout button located forward of the window switches. This feature disables the passenger's window switches when the window lockout button is pressed. To turn the lockout feature on or off, press the window lockout button. A red band on the side of the button can be seen when the windows are not locked out.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Sliding Rear Window



If your vehicle has this feature, squeeze the latch in the center of the window and slide the glass to open it.

When you close the window, be sure the latch is engaged.

Sun Visors

To block glare, pull the sun visor down. It can also be detached from the center mount and moved to the side to block glare from that direction.

Visor Vanity Mirror

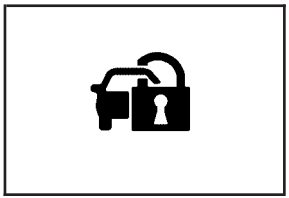
The passenger's side sun visor may have a mirror. Pull down the visor to access the mirror.

Theft-Deterrent Systems

Vehicle theft is big business, especially in some cities. Although your vehicle has a number of theft-deterrent features, we know that nothing we put on it can make it impossible to steal.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Content Theft-Deterrent



If your vehicle has the remote keyless entry system, the vehicle has a content theft-deterrent alarm system.

To activate the content theft-deterrent system, do the following:

1. Close all the doors.
2. Lock the doors with the remote keyless entry transmitter. The security light, located on the instrument panel cluster, will flash.

If the lock button on the remote keyless entry transmitter is pressed, but a door is open, the horn will chirp six times. Press the lock button again, within three seconds, and the doors will lock. Close the open door and the system will be activated.

If a locked door is not opened using the remote keyless entry transmitter, or by OnStar®, the pre-alarm will go off. If the engine is not started or unlock not pressed within 10 seconds, the front turn signal lamps will flash for two minutes, and the horn will sound for two minutes, then will turn off to save the battery power.

Remember, the theft-deterrent system will not activate if you lock the doors with a key, the manual door lock, or power door lock switch. The system can only be activated using the remote keyless entry transmitter, or by OnStar®. See *OnStar® System on page 147* for additional information. You should also remember that you can start your vehicle with the correct ignition key if the alarm has been set off.

Here is how to avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- If you do not want to activate the theft-deterrent system, the vehicle should be locked with the door key after the doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with the remote keyless entry transmitter. Unlocking a door any other way will set off the alarm.

If you set off the alarm by accident, you can turn off the alarm by pressing unlock on the remote keyless entry transmitter. The alarm will not stop if you try to unlock a door any other way.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Testing the Alarm

The alarm can be tested by following these steps:

1. From inside the vehicle, activate the system by locking the doors with the remote keyless entry transmitter.
2. Unlock the door with the manual door lock and open the door. This should set off the alarm.
3. To turn the alarm off, press the unlock button on the remote keyless entry transmitter or start the engine.

If the alarm does not sound when it should but the lights flash, check to see if the horn works. The horn fuse may be blown. To replace the fuse, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 435*.

If the alarm does not sound or the front turn signal lamps do not flash, see your dealer for service.

Passlock®

Your vehicle has the Passlock® theft-deterrent system.

Passlock® is a passive theft-deterrent system. Passlock® enables fuel if the ignition lock cylinder is turned with a valid key. If an incorrect key is used or the ignition lock cylinder is tampered with, the fuel system is disabled and the vehicle will not start.

During normal operation, the security light will turn off approximately five seconds after the engine is started. See *Security Light on page 194*.

If the engine stalls and the security light flashes, wait about 10 minutes until the light stops flashing before trying to restart the engine. Remember to release the key from START as soon as the engine starts.

If the engine does not start after three tries, the vehicle needs service.

If the engine is running and the security light comes on, you will be able to restart the engine if you turn the engine off. However, your Passlock® system is not working properly and must be serviced by your dealer. Your vehicle is not protected by Passlock® at this time. See your dealer for service.

In an emergency, call the Roadside Assistance Center. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 470*.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Starting and Operating Your Vehicle

New Vehicle Break-In

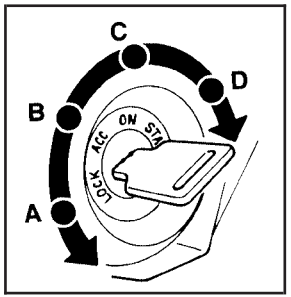
Notice: **Your vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:**

- **Keep your speed at 55 mph (88 km/h) or less for the first 500 miles (805 km).**
- **Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 500 miles (805 km). Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake, or slow, the vehicle.**
- **Avoid making hard stops for the first 200 miles (322 km) or so. During this time your new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.**
- **Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *Towing a Trailer on page 305* for the trailer towing capabilities of your vehicle and more information.**

Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Ignition Positions



With the key in the ignition switch, you can turn to four different positions.

LOCK (A): This position locks the ignition. It also locks the transmission on automatic transmission vehicles. It will locks the steering wheel on manual transmission vehicles when the key is removed. It is a theft-deterrent feature. You will only be able to remove your key when the ignition is turned to LOCK.

If you have an automatic transmission, the ignition switch cannot be turned to LOCK unless the shift lever is in PARK (P).

Notice: **Using a tool to force the key from the ignition switch could cause damage or break the key. Use the correct key and turn the key only with your hand. Make sure the key is all the way in. If it is, turn the steering wheel left and right while you turn the key hard. If none of this works, then your vehicle needs service.**

ACC (ACCESSORY) (B): This is the position in which you can operate your electrical accessories or items plugged into the accessory power outlets. On automatic transmission vehicles, this position unlocks the ignition. On manual transmission vehicles, it unlocks the ignition and steering wheel. Use this position if your vehicle must be pushed or towed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

ON (C): This is the position that the switch returns to after you start your engine and release the switch. The switch stays in ON when the engine is running. But even when the engine is not running, you can use ON to operate the electrical accessories and to display some instrument panel cluster warning and indicator lights. The transmission is also unlocked in this position on automatic transmission vehicles.

The battery could be drained if you leave the key in the ACC or ON position with the engine off. You may not be able to start your vehicle if the battery is allowed to drain for an extended period of time.

START (D): This is the position that starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The ignition switch returns to ON for driving.

When the engine is not running, ACC and ON allows you to operate the electrical accessories, such as the radio or items plugged into the accessory power outlets.

A warning tone will sound if you open the driver's door when the ignition is in ACC or LOCK and the key is in the ignition.

Key In the Ignition

Never leave your vehicle with the keys inside, as it is an easy target for joy riders or thieves. If you leave the key in the ignition and park your vehicle, a chime will sound, when you open the driver's door. Always remember to remove your key from the ignition and take it with you. This will lock your ignition and transmission. Also, always remember to lock the doors.

The battery could be drained if you leave the key in the ignition while your vehicle is parked. You may not be able to start your vehicle after it has been parked for an extended period of time.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

Your vehicle has Retained Accessory Power (RAP) which allows certain features of your vehicle to continue working for up to 20 minutes after the ignition key is turned to LOCK.

The radio, wipers, and power windows work when the ignition key is in ON or ACC. Once the key is turned from ON to LOCK, these features continue to work for up to 20 minutes or until a door is opened.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Starting the Engine

Place the transmission in the proper gear.

Automatic Transmission

Move your shift lever to PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). Your engine will not start in any other position -- this is a safety feature. To restart when you are already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only.

Notice: **Do not try to shift to PARK (P) if your vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to PARK (P) only when your vehicle is stopped.**

Manual Transmission

The shift lever should be in the NEUTRAL position and the parking brake engaged. Hold the clutch pedal to the floor and start the engine. Your vehicle will not start if the clutch pedal is not all the way down. That is a safety feature.

Starting Procedure

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will go down as the engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

   Your vehicle has a Computer-Controlled Cranking System. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects components. If the ignition key is turned to the START position, and then released when the engine begins cranking, the engine will continue cranking for a few seconds or until the vehicle starts. If the engine does not start and the key is held in START for many seconds, cranking will be stopped after 15 seconds to prevent cranking motor damage. To prevent gear damage, this system also prevents cranking if the engine is already running. Engine cranking can be stopped by turning the ignition switch to the ACC or LOCK position.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by returning the key to the START position immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down.**

2. If the engine does not start after 5-10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below 0°F or –18°C), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for up to a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the key and accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

Notice: **Your engine is designed to work with the electronics in your vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer. If you do not, your engine might not perform properly. Any resulting damage would not be covered by your vehicle's warranty.**

Engine Coolant Heater

Your vehicle may have this feature.

In very cold weather, 0°F (–18°C) or colder, the engine coolant heater can help. You will get easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up. Usually, the coolant heater should be plugged in a minimum of four hours prior to starting your vehicle. At temperatures above 32°F (0°C), use of the coolant heater is not required. Your vehicle may also have an internal thermostat in the plug end of the cord. This will prevent operation of the engine coolant heater when the temperature is at or above 0F (–18C) as noted on the cord.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. The cord is located in the engine compartment behind the underhood fuse block on the driver's side of the vehicle.
3. Plug it into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

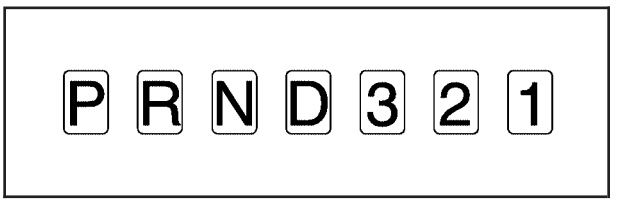
⚠ CAUTION:

Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire. You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord will not reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you do not, it could be damaged.

How long should you keep the coolant heater plugged in? The answer depends on the outside temperature, the kind of oil you have, and some other things. Instead of trying to list everything here, we ask that you contact your dealer in the area where you will be parking your vehicle. The dealer can give you the best advice for that particular area.

Automatic Transmission Operation



Your automatic transmission has a shift lever on the steering column.

It features an electronic shift position indicator within the instrument cluster. This display must be powered anytime the shift lever is capable of being moved out of PARK (P). This means that if your key is turned off, but not in LOCK, there will be a small current drain on your battery which could discharge your battery over a period of time.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If you need to leave your key in the ignition but not in LOCK for an extended period, it is recommended that you disconnect the battery cable from the battery to prevent discharging your battery.

There are several different positions for your shift lever.

PARK (P): This position locks your rear wheels. It is the best position to use when you start your engine because your vehicle cannot move easily.

⚠ CAUTION:

It is dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll.

Do not leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P). See *Shifting Into Park (P) (Automatic Transmission) on page 132*. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 305*.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in PARK (P) before starting the engine. Your vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. You must fully apply your regular brakes before you can shift from PARK (P) when the ignition key is in ON. If you cannot shift out of PARK (P), ease pressure on the shift lever by pushing the shift lever all the way into PARK (P) as you maintain brake application. Then move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting Out of Park (P) (Automatic Transmission) on page 134*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

REVERSE (R): Use this gear to back up.

Notice: **Shifting to REVERSE (R) while your vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Shift to REVERSE (R) only after your vehicle is stopped.**

To rock your vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging your transmission, see *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 288*.

NEUTRAL (N): In this position, your engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart when you are already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only.

⚠ CAUTION:

Shifting into a drive gear while your engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, your vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while your engine is running at high speed.

Notice: **Shifting out of PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting your vehicle.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

DRIVE (D): This position is for normal driving. If provides the best fuel economy for your vehicle. If you need more power for passing, and you are:

- Going less than about 35 mph (55 km/h), push your accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 35 mph (55 km/h) or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

  You will shift down to the next gear and have more power.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding, see “Skidding” under *Loss of Control on page 259* Loss of Control.

THIRD (3): This position is also used for normal driving. However, it reduces vehicle speed more than DRIVE (D) without using your brakes. You might choose THIRD (3) instead of DRIVE (D) when driving on hilly, winding roads, when towing a trailer, so there is less shifting between gears and when going down a steep hill.

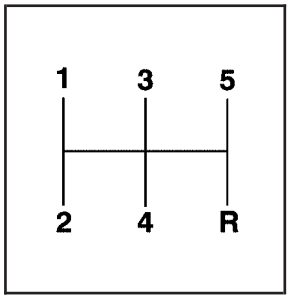
SECOND (2): This position reduces vehicle speed even more than THIRD (3) without using your brakes. You can use SECOND (2) on hills. It can help control your speed as you go down steep mountain roads, but then you would also want to use your brakes off and on.

FIRST (1): This position reduces vehicle speed even more than SECOND (2) without using your brakes. You can use it on very steep hills, or in deep snow or mud. If the shift lever is put in FIRST (1) while the vehicle is moving forward, the transmission will not shift into first gear until the vehicle is going slowly enough.

Notice: **Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by your warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Manual Transmission Operation



This is your shift pattern.

Here is how to operate your manual transmission:

FIRST (1): Press the clutch pedal and shift into FIRST (1). Then, slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you slowly press down on the accelerator pedal.

You can shift into FIRST (1) when you are going less than 20 mph (30 km/h). If you have come to a complete stop and it is hard to shift into FIRST (1), put the shift lever in NEUTRAL and let up on the clutch. Then press the clutch pedal back down and shift into FIRST (1).

SECOND (2): Press the clutch pedal as you let up on the accelerator pedal and shift into SECOND (2). Then, slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal.

THIRD, FOURTH AND FIFTH (3, 4 and 5): Shift into THIRD (3), FOURTH (4) and FIFTH (5) the same way you do for SECOND (2). Slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal.

To stop, let up on the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal. Just before the vehicle stops, press the clutch pedal and the brake pedal, and shift to NEUTRAL.

NEUTRAL: Use this position when you start or idle your engine.

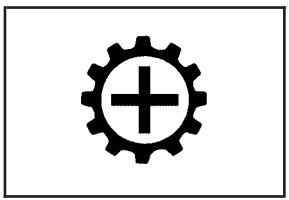
REVERSE (R): To back up, press the clutch pedal. After the vehicle stops, shift into REVERSE (R). Slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal. If it is hard to shift, let the shift lever return to NEUTRAL and release the clutch pedal. Then press the clutch again and shift into REVERSE (R). Do not attempt to shift into the fifth gear position prior to shifting into REVERSE (R). Your transmission has a lock out feature which prevents a fifth gear to reverse gear shift.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **Shifting to REVERSE (R) while your vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Shift to REVERSE (R) only after your vehicle is stopped.**

Use REVERSE (R), along with the parking brake, for parking your vehicle.

Up-Shift Light



This light will show you when to shift to the next higher gear for best fuel economy.

When this light comes on, you can shift to the next higher gear if weather, road and traffic conditions permit. For the best fuel economy, accelerate slowly and shift when the light comes on.

While you accelerate, it is normal for the light to go on and off if you quickly change the position of the accelerator. Ignore the shift light when you downshift.

If your vehicle has four-wheel drive and has a manual transmission, disregard the shift light when the transfer case is in four-wheel low.

For more information, see *Up-Shift Light (Manual Transmission) on page 187*.

Shift Speeds

⚠ CAUTION:

If you skip a gear when you downshift, you could lose control of your vehicle. You could injure yourself or others. Do not shift down more than one gear at a time when you downshift.

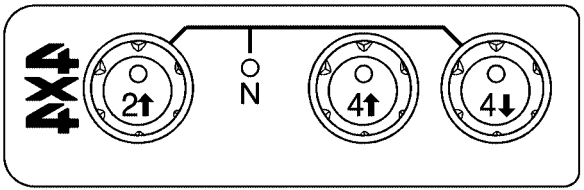
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Four-Wheel Drive

If your vehicle has four-wheel drive, you can send your engine's driving power to all four wheels for extra traction. To get the best performance out of four-wheel drive, you must be familiar with its operation. Read the part that follows before using four-wheel drive. You should use two-wheel-drive high for most normal driving conditions.

Notice: **Driving on clean, dry pavement in four-wheel drive for an extended period of time can cause premature wear on your vehicle's powertrain. Do not drive on clean, dry pavement in four-wheel drive for extended periods of time.**

Notice: **If your vehicle has four-wheel drive and the compact spare tire is installed on your vehicle, do not drive in four-wheel drive until you can have your flat tire repaired and/or replaced. You could damage your vehicle, and the repair costs would not be covered by your warranty. Never use four-wheel drive when the compact spare tire is installed on your vehicle.**



The transfer case buttons are located to the right of the steering wheel on the instrument panel.

Recommended Transfer Case Settings

Driving Conditions	Transfer Case Settings			
	2 ↑	4 ↑	4 ↓	N
Normal	YES			
Severe		YES		
Extreme			YES	
Vehicle in Tow*				YES

*See *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 297* or *Towing Your Vehicle on page 297* for further information.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Use these buttons to shift into and out of four-wheel drive. You can choose from the following:

2 ↑ (Two-Wheel High): This setting is for driving in most street and highway situations. Your front axle is not engaged in two-wheel drive.

⚠ CAUTION:

Shifting the transfer case to NEUTRAL can cause your vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in PARK (P), or if you have a manual transmission, even if you are in gear. You or someone else could be seriously injured. Be sure to set the parking brake before placing the transfer case in NEUTRAL. See *Parking Brake on page 130*.

N (NEUTRAL): Shift the vehicle's transfer case to NEUTRAL only when towing your vehicle.

4 ↑ (Four-Wheel High): This setting engages your front axle to help drive your vehicle. Use four-wheel high when you need extra traction, such as on snowy or icy roads, or in most off-road situations.

4 ↓ (Four-Wheel Low): This setting also engages your front axle to give you extra traction. It sends the maximum power to all four wheels. You might choose four-wheel low if you were driving off-road in sand, mud, or deep snow and while climbing or descending steep hills.

Indicator lights in the buttons show you which setting you are in. The indicator lights will come on briefly when you turn on the ignition and one will stay on the selected setting. If the lights do not come on, you should take your vehicle in for service. An indicator light will flash while shifting. It will stay on when the shift is completed.

If for some reason the transfer case does not shift, it will return to the last chosen setting.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting from Two-Wheel High to Four-Wheel High

Press and release the Four-Wheel High button. This can be done at any speed, and the front axle will lock automatically.

Shifting from Four-Wheel High to Two-Wheel High

Press and release the Two-Wheel High button. This can be done at any speed, and the front axle will unlock automatically.

It is normal to hear and feel your vehicle's transfer case shift into Four-Wheel High. If you shift with the vehicle stopped, the indicator light may still flash slowly. It may be necessary to shift the transmission momentarily into REVERSE (R) and DRIVE (D), for an automatic transmission, or REVERSE (R) and FIRST (1) for a manual transmission to have the light stop flashing.

Shifting from Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High to Four-Wheel Low

To shift from Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High to Four-Wheel Low, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 3 mph (5 km/h) with the transmission in NEUTRAL (N) for an automatic transmission or the clutch pedal pressed for a manual transmission. The preferred method for shifting into Four-Wheel Low is to have your vehicle moving 1 to 2 mph (1.6 to 3.2 km/h).

Press and release the Four-Wheel Low button. You must wait for the Four-Wheel Low indicator light to stop flashing and stay on before shifting the transmission into gear or releasing the clutch pedal.

If the Four-Wheel Low button is pressed when your vehicle is in gear and/or moving faster than 3 mph (5 km/h), the four-wheel low indicator light will flash for 30 seconds and not complete the shift.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting from Four-Wheel Low to Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High

To shift from Four-Wheel Low to Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High, your vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 3 mph (5 km/h) with the transmission in NEUTRAL (N) for an automatic transmission or the clutch pedal engaged for a manual transmission. The preferred method for shifting out of four-wheel low is to have your vehicle moving 1 to 2 mph (1.6 to 3.2 km/h).

Press and release the Four-Wheel High or Two-Wheel High button. You must wait for the Four-Wheel High or Two-Wheel High indicator light to stop flashing and stay on before shifting the transmission into gear or releasing the clutch pedal.

If the Four-Wheel High or Two-Wheel High button is pressed when your vehicle is in gear and/or moving faster than 3 mph (5km/h), the Four-Wheel High or Two Wheel High indicator light will flash for 30 seconds but not complete the shift.

Shifting to NEUTRAL

Use NEUTRAL when you plan to tow your vehicle. See *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 297* for towing instructions. To shift the transfer case into NEUTRAL do the following:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Press the regular brake pedal and shift the transmission in NEUTRAL (N), or press in the clutch for vehicles with a manual transmission.
4. Shift the transfer case to Two-Wheel High.
5. Press and hold the Two-Wheel High and Four-Wheel Low buttons at the same time for 10 seconds. The NEUTRAL (N) light will come on when the transfer case shift to NEUTRAL (N) is complete.
6. Press and hold the regular brake pedal and shift the transmission to REVERSE (R) for one second, then shift the transmission to DRIVE (D) for one second, or FIRST (1) for vehicles with manual transmissions, and let out the clutch to insure the transfer case is in NEUTRAL. If the vehicle is not in NEUTRAL, repeat this procedure starting at Step 3.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

7. Turn the engine off by turning the key to ACC (Accessory).
8. Place the transmission shift lever in PARK (P), or FIRST (1) for vehicles that have a manual transmission.
9. Turn the ignition to LOCK.

Shifting Out of NEUTRAL

After towing your vehicle, you will have to shift out of NEUTRAL in order to drive. To shift out of NEUTRAL, do the following:

1. Set the parking brake and apply the regular brake pedal.
2. Start a vehicle with an automatic transmission in PARK (P). Use FIRST (1) for vehicles with a manual transmission.
3. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL (N), or press the clutch pedal for vehicles with a manual transmission.
4. Press the button for the desired transfer case shift position (Two-Wheel High, Four-Wheel High, or Four-Wheel Low).
5. After the transfer case has shifted out of NEUTRAL, the indicator light will go out.
6. Release the parking brake.
7. Shift the transmission to the desired position.

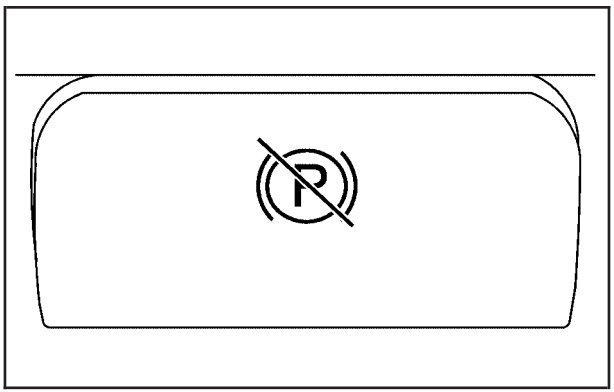
Parking Brake

The parking brake pedal is located to the left of the regular brake pedal, near the driver's door.

To set the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down with your right foot. Push the parking brake pedal down to its fully-applied position with your left foot.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

A chime will activate and the brake warning light, located on the instrument panel, will flash when the parking brake is applied and the vehicle is moving at least 3 mph (5 km/h) for at least three seconds. The chime will deactivate and the light will turn off when the parking brake is set and the vehicle is moving below 3 mph (5 km/h). See *Brake System Warning Light on page 187*.



To release the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down. Pull the bottom edge of the lever, located above the parking brake pedal, with the parking brake symbol, directly rearward to release the parking brake.

If the ignition is on when the parking brake is released, the brake system warning light will go off.

Notice: **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Verify that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.**

If you are towing a trailer and are parking on any hill, see *Towing a Trailer on page 305*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting Into Park (P) (Automatic Transmission)

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 305*.

1. Hold the brake pedal down with your right foot and set the parking brake.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you have four-wheel drive, your vehicle will be free to roll — even if your shift lever is in PARK (P) — if your transfer case is in NEUTRAL. So, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear, two-wheel high (2H) or four-wheel high (4H) or four-wheel low (4L) — not in NEUTRAL.

2. Move the shift lever into PARK (P) by pulling the lever toward you and moving it up as far as it will go.
3. Turn the ignition key to LOCK.
4. Remove the key and take it with you. If you can leave your vehicle with the key, your vehicle is in PARK (P).

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Leaving Your Vehicle With the Engine Running (Automatic Transmission)

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to leave your vehicle with the engine running. Your vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not leave your vehicle with the engine running.

If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, be sure your vehicle is in PARK (P) and your parking brake is firmly set before you leave it. After you have moved the shift lever into PARK (P), hold the regular brake pedal down. Then, see if you can move the shift lever away from PARK (P) without first pulling it toward you. If you can, it means that the shift lever was not fully locked into PARK (P).

Torque Lock (Automatic Transmission)

If you are parking on a hill and you do not shift your transmission into PARK (P) properly, the weight of the vehicle may put too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. You may find it difficult to pull the shift lever out of PARK (P). This is called torque lock. To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into PARK (P) properly before you leave the driver's seat. To find out how, see *Shifting Into Park (P) (Automatic Transmission) on page 132*.

When you are ready to drive, move the shift lever out of PARK (P) before you release the parking brake.

If torque lock does occur, you may need to have another vehicle push yours a little uphill to take some of the pressure from the parking pawl in the transmission, so you can pull the shift lever out of PARK (P).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting Out of Park (P) (Automatic Transmission)

Your vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system which locks the shift lever in PARK (P) when the ignition is in the LOCK position. In addition, you have to fully apply the regular brakes before you can shift from PARK (P) when the ignition is in ON. See *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 120*.

If you cannot shift out of PARK (P), ease pressure on the shift lever by pushing the shift lever all the way into PARK (P) as you maintain brake application. Then, move the shift lever into the gear you want.

If you ever hold the brake pedal down but still cannot shift out of PARK (P), try this:

1. Turn the key to ACC. There is no shift interlock in this key position.
2. Apply and hold the brake until the end of Step 4.
3. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL (N).
4. Start the vehicle and then shift to the gear you want.
5. Have the system fixed as soon as you can.

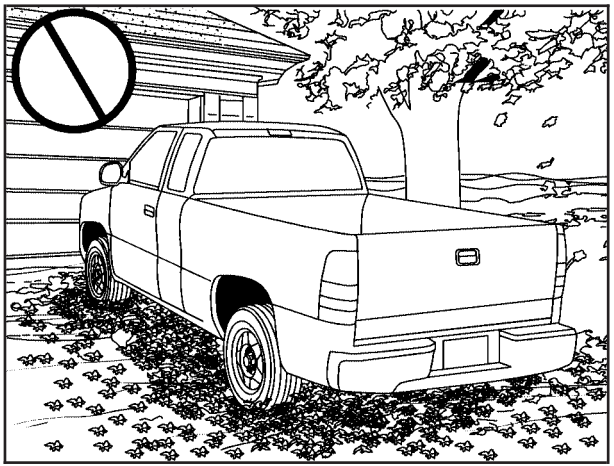
Parking Your Vehicle (Manual Transmission)

Your vehicle has a manual transmission. Before you get out of your vehicle, move the shift lever into REVERSE (R), and firmly apply the parking brake. Once the shift lever has been placed into REVERSE (R) with the clutch pedal pressed in, turn the ignition key to LOCK, remove the key and release the clutch.

If you are parking on a hill, or if your vehicle is pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 305*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Parking Over Things That Burn



⚠ CAUTION:

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Exhaust

⚠ CAUTION:

Engine exhaust can kill. It contains the gas carbon monoxide (CO), which you cannot see or smell. It can cause unconsciousness and death.

You might have exhaust coming in if:

- **Your exhaust system sounds strange or different.**
- **Your vehicle gets rusty underneath.**
- **Your vehicle was damaged in a collision.**

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

- **Your vehicle was damaged when driving over high points on the road or over road debris.**
- **Repairs were not done correctly.**
- **Your vehicle or exhaust system has been modified improperly.**

If you ever suspect exhaust is coming into your vehicle:

- **Drive it only with all the windows down to blow out any CO; and**
- **Have your vehicle fixed immediately.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Running the Engine While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

⚠ CAUTION:

Idling the engine with the climate control system off could allow dangerous exhaust into your vehicle. See the earlier caution under *Engine Exhaust on page 136*.

Also, idling in a closed-in place can let deadly carbon monoxide (CO) into your vehicle even if the climate control fan is at the highest setting. One place this can happen is a garage. Exhaust — with CO — can come in easily. NEVER park in a garage with the engine running.

Another closed-in place can be a blizzard. See *Winter Driving on page 284*.

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the automatic transmission shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. Do not leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when it is on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the automatic transmission shift lever to PARK (P), or the manual transmission shift lever to NEUTRAL.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

> **⚠ CAUTION:**
>
> **Four-wheel drive vehicles with the transfer case in NEUTRAL will allow the vehicle to roll, even if your automatic transmission shift lever is in PARK (P). So, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear — not in NEUTRAL. Always set your parking brake.**

Follow the proper steps to be sure your vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park (P) (Automatic Transmission) on page 132*.

If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 305*.

Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror

While sitting in a comfortable driving position, adjust the mirror so you can see clearly behind your vehicle. Grip the mirror in the center to move it up or down and side to side. The control at the bottom of the mirror is the day/night feature that allows adjustment to the mirror so that the glare of headlamps from behind is reduced. Push the control for daytime use; pull it for night use.

Manual Rearview Mirror with OnStar®

Mirror Operation

Your vehicle may have a manual rearview mirror with the OnStar® System. You can adjust the mirror for day or night driving. Press the tab forward for day driving. Pull the tab back for night driving.

There are also three OnStar® buttons located at the bottom of the mirror. See your dealer for more information on the system and how to subscribe to OnStar®. See *OnStar® System on page 147* for more information about the services OnStar® provides.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning the Mirror

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror housing.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display

Your vehicle may have this feature. When on, the automatic dimming mirror dims to the proper level to minimize glare from lights behind you after dark.

The mirror has a dual display in the upper right corner of the mirror face that shows the compass reading and the outside temperature.

Control buttons for the OnStar® system are at the bottom of the mirror. See *OnStar® System on page 147* for more information about the services OnStar® provides.

(On/Off): This is the on/off button.

Temperature and Compass Display

Press the on/off button, located to the far left, briefly to turn the compass/temperature display on or off.

If the display reads CAL, the compass needs to be calibrated. For more information, see “Compass Calibration” following.

To adjust between Fahrenheit and Celsius, do the following:

1. Press and hold the on/off button for approximately four seconds until either a flashing F or C appears.
2. Press the button again to change the display to the desired unit of measurement. After approximately four seconds of inactivity, the new unit will be locked in and the compass/temperature display will return.

If an abnormal temperature reading is displayed for an extended period of time, see your dealer. Under certain circumstances, a delay in updating the temperature is normal.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Dimming Mirror Operation

The automatic dimming mirror function is turned on automatically each time the ignition is started. To operate the automatic dimming mirror, do the following:

1. Make sure the green indicator light, located to the left of the on/off button, is lit. If it is not, press and hold the on/off button for approximately six seconds until the green light comes on, indicating that the mirror is in automatic dimming mode.
2. Turn off the automatic dimming mirror function by pressing and holding the on/off button for approximately six seconds, until the green indicator light turns off.

Compass Calibration

The compass may need calibration if one of the following occurs:

- After approximately five seconds, the display does not show a compass heading, N for North, for example, there may be a strong magnetic field interfering with the compass. Such interference may be caused by a magnetic antenna mount, magnetic note pad holder, or a similar magnetic item.
- The compass does not display the correct heading and the compass zone variance is set correctly.

In order to calibrate, CAL must be displayed in the mirror compass windows. If CAL is not displayed, push the on/off button for approximately 12 seconds or until CAL is displayed.

The compass can be calibrated by driving the vehicle in circles at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less until the display reads a direction.

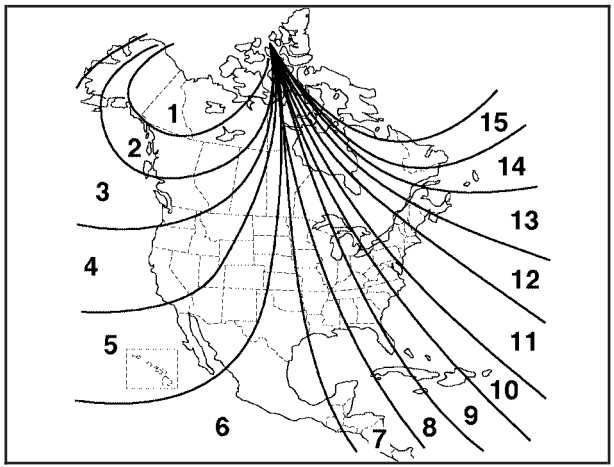
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Compass Variance

The mirror is set in zone eight upon leaving the factory. It will be necessary to adjust the compass to compensate for compass variance if the vehicle is outside of zone eight. Under certain circumstances, as during a long distance cross-country trip, it will be necessary to adjust for compass variance. Compass variance is the difference between earth's magnetic north and true geographic north. If not adjusted to account for compass variance, the compass could give false readings.

To adjust for compass variance, do the following:

1. Find your current location and variance zone number on the following zone map.



2. Press and hold the on/off button until a Z and a zone number appears in the display. The compass is now in zone mode.
3. Keep pressing the on/off button until the desired zone number appears in the display. Release the button. After approximately four seconds of inactivity, the new zone number will be locked in and the compass/temperature display will return.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning the Mirror

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with Compass and Temperature Display

Your vehicle may have this mirror. When on, an automatic dimming mirror will dim to the proper level to minimize glare from lights behind you after dark.

The mirror also includes a dual display in the upper right corner of the mirror with the compass reading and the outside temperature.

: Briefly press this button to turn the display on or off.

Temperature Display

The temperature can be displayed by pressing the compass/temperature button. Pressing the compass/temperature button once briefly, will toggle the display reading on and off. To alternate the temperature reading between Fahrenheit and Celsius, press and hold the compass/ temperature button for approximately three seconds until the display blinks F and C. After approximately five seconds of inactivity, the display will stop blinking and display the last selection made.

If an abnormal reading is displayed, see your dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Dimming Mirror Operation

⏻ **:** Press this button to turn the automatic dimming feature on or off. The indicator light to the left of the button will turn on to indicate when the feature is on. Once the mirror is turned off, it will remain off until it is turned back on, or until the vehicle is restarted.

Compass Operation

Press the compass/temperature button once briefly to turn the display on or off.

Compass Calibration

The compass may need calibration if one of the following occurs:

- If CAL is displayed while driving in the vehicle.
- After approximately five seconds, the display does not show a compass heading, N for North, for example, there may be a strong magnetic field interfering with the compass. Such interference may be caused by a magnetic antenna mount, magnetic note pad holder, or a similar magnetic item.
- The compass does not display the correct heading and the compass zone variance is set correctly.

In order to calibrate, CAL must be displayed in the mirror compass windows. If CAL is not displayed, push in the compass/temperature button for approximately nine seconds or until CAL is displayed.

The compass can be calibrated by driving the vehicle in circles at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less until the display reads a direction.

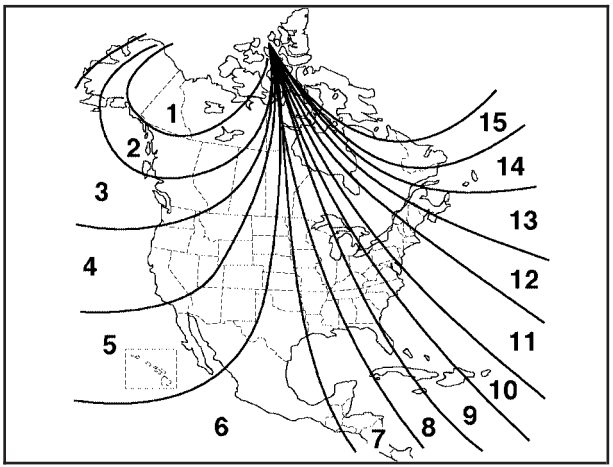
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Compass Variance

The mirror is set in zone eight upon leaving the factory. It will be necessary to adjust the compass to compensate for compass variance if the vehicle is outside zone eight. Under certain circumstances, as during a long distance cross-country trip, it will be necessary to adjust for compass variance. Compass variance is the difference between earth's magnetic north and true geographic north. If not adjusted to account for compass variance, your compass could give false readings.

To adjust for compass variance:

1. Find your current location and variance zone number on the following zone map.



2. Press and hold the compass/temperature button for six seconds until a zone number appears in the display.
3. Press the compass/temperature button on the bottom of the mirror until the new zone number appears in the display. After you stop pressing the button, the display will show a compass direction within a few seconds.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning the Mirror

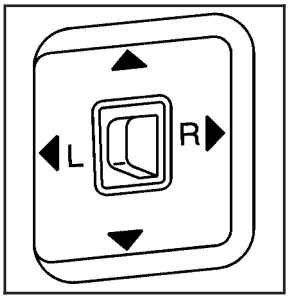
Use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

Outside Manual Mirrors

If the vehicle has manual outside mirrors, adjust them by hand so that the side of the vehicle can be seen while you are sitting in a comfortable driving position.

The mirrors can be folded inward to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. To fold, push the mirror toward the vehicle. To return the mirror to its original position, push outward. Return both mirrors to the unfolded position before driving.

Outside Power Mirrors



If your vehicle has this feature, the controls are located on the driver's door armrest.

To adjust the power mirrors, do the following:

1. Move the selector switch to the L (left) or R (right) to choose the driver's or passenger's mirror.
2. Use the arrows located on the four-way control pad to move the mirror in the direction you want the mirror to go.
3. Return the selector switch to the center position once the mirrors are adjusted.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the mirror begins making a ratcheting sound, the mirror has reached the end of its travel and can go no farther in that direction. To stop the sound, reverse the mirror direction using the control pad.

The mirrors can be manually folded inward to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. To fold, push the mirror toward the vehicle. To return the mirror to its original position, push outward. Be sure to return both mirrors to the unfolded position before driving.

Outside Convex Mirror

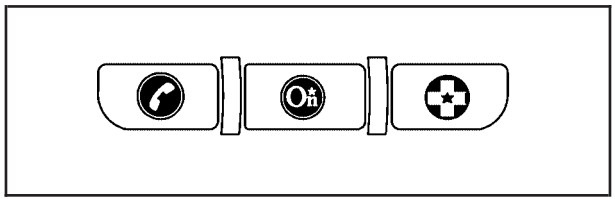
Your passenger's outside rearview mirror is convex. A convex mirror's surface is curved so you can see more from the driver's seat.

⚠ CAUTION:

A convex mirror can make things (like other vehicles) look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on your right. Check your inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

OnStar® System



OnStar® uses several innovative technologies and live advisors to provide you with a wide range of safety, security, information, and convenience services. If your airbags deploy, the system is designed to make an automatic call to OnStar® Emergency advisors who can request emergency services be sent to your location. If you lock your keys in the vehicle, call OnStar® at 1-888-4-ONSTAR and they can send a signal to unlock your doors. If you need roadside assistance, press the OnStar® button and they can contact Roadside Service for you.

OnStar® service is provided to you subject to the OnStar® Terms and Conditions. You may cancel your OnStar® service at any time by contacting OnStar® as provided below. A complete OnStar® Owner's Guide and the OnStar® Terms and Conditions are included in the vehicle's OnStar® Subscriber glove box literature. For more information, visit onstar.com or onstar.ca, contact OnStar® at 1–888–4–ONSTAR (1–888–466–7827) or TTY 1–877–248–2080, or press the OnStar® button to speak with an OnStar® advisor 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

Not all OnStar® features are available on all vehicles. To check if your vehicle is equipped to provide the services described below, or for a full description of OnStar® services and system limitations, see the OnStar® Owner's Guide in your glove box or visit onstar.com.

OnStar® Services

For new vehicles equipped with OnStar®, the Safe & Sound Plan, or the Directions & Connections® Plan is included for one year from the date of purchase. You can extend this plan beyond the first year, or upgrade to the Directions & Connections® Plan. For more information, press the OnStar® button to speak with an advisor. Some OnStar® services (such as Remote Door Unlock or Stolen Vehicle Location Assistance) may not be available until you register with OnStar®.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Available Services with Safe & Sound® Plan

- Automatic Notification of Airbag Deployment
- Advanced Automatic Crash Notification (AACN) (If equipped)
- Link to Emergency Services
- Roadside Assistance
- Stolen Vehicle Location Assistance
- AccidentAssist
- Remote Door Unlock/Vehicle Alert
- OnStar® Vehicle Diagnostics
- GM® Goodwrench® On Demand Diagnostics
- OnStar® Hands-Free Calling with 30 complimentary minutes
- OnStar® Virtual Advisor

Available Services included with Directions & Connections® Plan

- All Safe and Sound Plan Services
- Driving Directions - Advisor delivered or OnStar® Turn-by-Turn Navigation (If equipped)
- RideAssist
- Information and Convenience Services

OnStar® Hands-Free Calling

OnStar® Hands-Free Calling allows eligible OnStar® subscribers to make and receive calls using voice commands. Hands-Free Calling is fully integrated into the vehicle, and can be used with OnStar® Pre-Paid Minute Packages. Hands-Free Calling may also be linked to a Verizon Wireless service plan, depending on eligibility. To find out more, refer to the OnStar® Owner's Guide in the vehicle's glove box, visit www.onstar.com or www.onstar.ca, or speak with an OnStar® advisor by pressing the OnStar® button or calling 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827).

OnStar® Virtual Advisor

OnStar® Virtual Advisor is a feature of OnStar® Hands-Free Calling that uses your minutes to access location-based weather, local traffic reports, and stock quotes. By pressing the phone button and giving a few simple voice commands, you can browse through the various topics. See the OnStar® Owner's Guide for more information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

OnStar® Steering Wheel Controls

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Talk/Mute button that can be used to interact with OnStar® Hands-Free Calling.

On some vehicles, you may have to hold the button for a few seconds and give the command "ONSTAR" in order to activate the OnStar® Hands-Free Calling feature.

On some vehicles, the mute button can be used to dial numbers into voicemail systems, or to dial phone extensions. See the OnStar® Owner's Guide for more information.

How OnStar® Service Works

In order to provide you with OnStar® services, your vehicle's OnStar® system has the capability of recording and transmitting vehicle information. This information is automatically sent to an OnStar® Call Center at the time of an OnStar® button press, Emergency button press or if your airbags or AACN system deploys. The vehicle information usually includes your GPS location and, in the event of a crash, additional information regarding the accident that your vehicle has been involved in (e.g. the direction from which your vehicle was hit). When you use the Virtual Advisor feature of OnStar® Hands-Free Calling, your vehicle also sends OnStar® your GPS location so that we can provide you with location-based services.

OnStar® service cannot work unless your vehicle is in a place where OnStar® has an agreement with a wireless service provider for service in that area. OnStar® service also cannot work unless you are in a place where the wireless service provider OnStar® has hired for that area has coverage, network capacity and reception when the service is needed, and technology that is compatible with the OnStar® service. Not all services are available everywhere, particularly in remote or enclosed areas, or at all times.

OnStar® service that involves location information about your vehicle cannot work unless GPS satellite signals are unobstructed and available in that place as well.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Your vehicle must have a working electrical system (including adequate battery power) for the OnStar® equipment to operate. There are other problems OnStar® cannot control that may prevent OnStar® from providing OnStar® service to you at any particular time or place. Some examples are damage to important parts of your vehicle in an accident, hills, tall buildings, tunnels, weather or wireless phone network congestion.

Your Responsibility

You may need to increase the volume of your radio to hear the OnStar® advisor. If the light next to the OnStar® buttons is red, this means that your system is not functioning properly and should be checked by a dealer. If the light appears clear (no light is appearing), your OnStar® subscription has expired. You can always press the blue OnStar® button to confirm that your OnStar® equipment is active.

Storage Areas

Glove Box

To open the glove box, pull on the lever.

Cupholder(s)

Your vehicle may have two cupholders located on the lower part of the front doors as well as two cupholders located at the front end of the console. Vehicles with bench seats may have cupholders attached to the front of the center seat.

If your vehicle is an extended cab or crew cab model, your vehicle also has two rear cupholders. On crew cab models, the cupholders are located at the front end of the rear center seat cushion. On extended cab models, the rear seat cupholders are located on top of the rear center console.

If you have an ashtray, it will use one of the cupholders.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Front Armrest Storage Area

For vehicles with bench seats, you may have a center armrest storage area. Lift up on the upper tab located at the front of the armrest to release the latch. Lift the lid to open the storage area.

For vehicles with bucket seats or uplevel packages, your vehicle may have a two-tiered center armrest storage area. Lift up on the upper tab located at the front of the armrest to release the latch. Lift the lid to the top storage area. A second tab is located below the top one and allows you to access the bottom storage area. Lift up on the lower tab to release the latch. Then, raise the lid of the lower storage area. The upper storage area will lift up with the lid of the lower storage area.

To close the storage area(s), lower the lid(s) until you feel the latch close.

Assist Handles

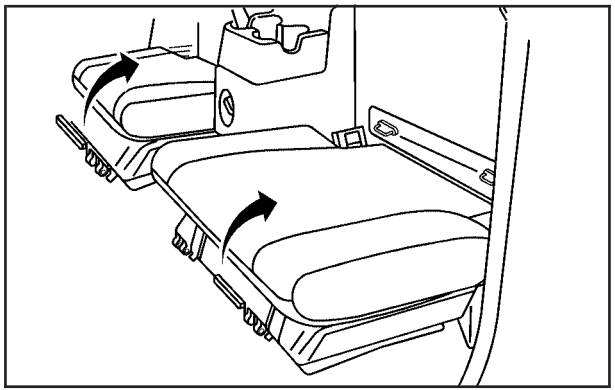
Your vehicle may have assist handles to be used when getting out of your vehicle. If your vehicle has assist handles, they are located above the doors.

If your vehicle has roof-mounted side impact air bags, there are assist handles located above both the driver's and front passenger's doors.

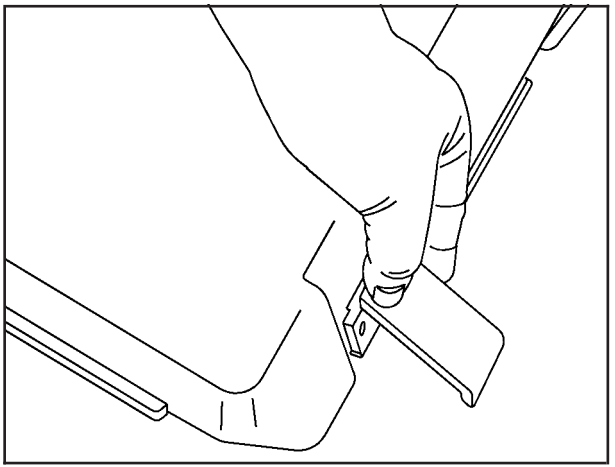
Rear Storage Area

If your vehicle is an extended cab model, it might have storage compartments under the rear seats.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

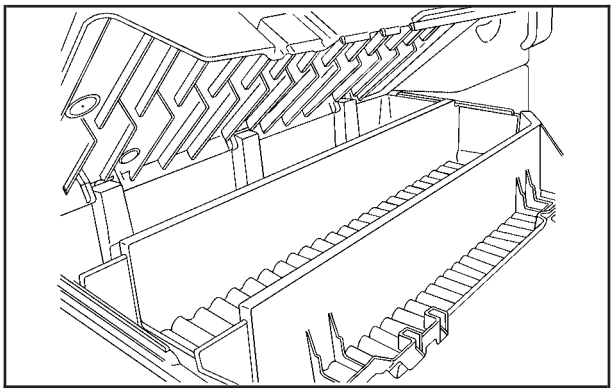


To access the storage compartments, lift the cushion on the bottom of the rear seats. This exposes the storage boxes under the seat.



To open a storage box, unhook the bottom and lift the two latches on each side of the storage box.

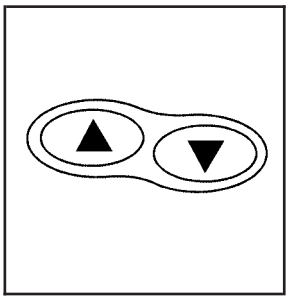
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



Lift the lid from the center area to access the storage box.

Sunroof

Your vehicle may have a sunroof.



The sunroof control buttons are located on the headliner.

▲ **(Open/Vent):** Press and hold this button to vent, and open the sunroof. Release the button when the desired position is reached.

▼ **(Close):** Press and hold this button to close the sunroof. Release the button when the desired position is reached.

The sunshade must be opened manually.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTES

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 3 Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview 158
- Hazard Warning Flashers 160
- Other Warning Devices 160
- Horn 160
- Tilt Wheel 161
- Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever 161
- Turn and Lane-Change Signals 162
- Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 163
- Flash-to-Pass 163
- Windshield Wipers 163
- Windshield Washer 164
- Cruise Control 164
- Exterior Lamps 168
- Headlamps on Reminder 169
- Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 170
- Automatic Headlamp System 170
- Fog Lamps 171
- Exterior Cargo Lamps 172
- Interior Lamps 172
- Instrument Panel Brightness 172
- Dome Lamp 173
- Dome Lamp Override 173
- Exit Lighting 173
- Electric Power Management 173
- Battery Run-Down Protection 174
- Accessory Power Outlet(s) 174
- Ashtray(s) and Cigarette Lighter 175

Climate Controls 176
- Climate Control System 176
- Outlet Adjustment 178

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 179
- Instrument Panel Cluster 180
- Speedometer and Odometer 181
- Trip Odometer 181
- Tachometer 181
- Safety Belt Reminder Light 182
- Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light 182
- Airbag Readiness Light 183
- Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 184
- Battery Warning Light 186
- Up-Shift Light (Manual Transmission) 187
- Brake System Warning Light 187
- Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light 188
- Engine Coolant Temperature Gage 189
- Tire Pressure Light 189
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp 190
- Oil Pressure Light 193

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

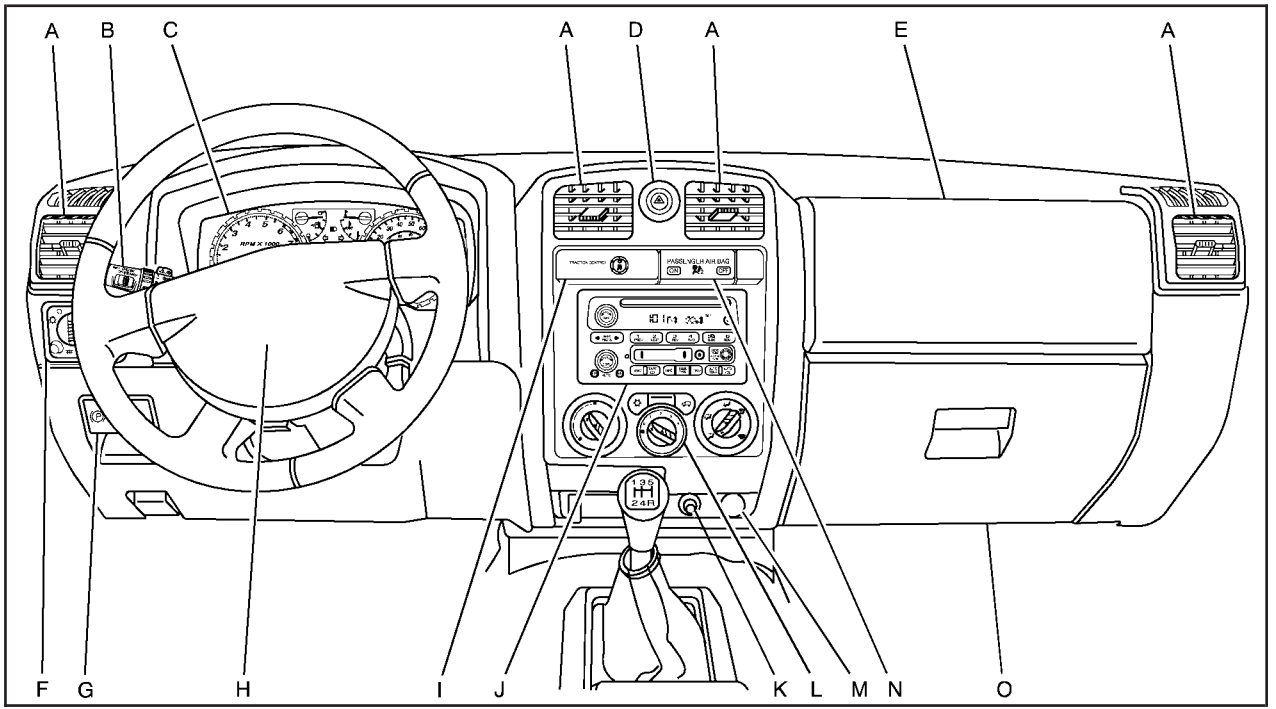
Security Light 194
Cruise Control Light 194
Highbeam On Light 194
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) Indicator Light 195
Fuel Gage 195
Driver Information Center (DIC) 196
DIC Controls and Displays 196
DIC Warnings and Messages 200
Audio System(s) 205
Setting the Time for Radios without Radio Data Systems (RDS) 206
Setting the Time for Radios with Radio Data Systems (RDS) 207
AM-FM Radio 207
Radio with CD (MP3) 210
Radio with Six-Disc CD 221
Using an MP3 234
XM Radio Messages 240
Theft-Deterrent Feature (Non-RDS Radios) 242
Theft-Deterrent Feature (RDS Radios) 242
Radio Reception 242
Care of Your CDs 243
Care of the CD Player 243
Fixed Mast Antenna 244
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 244
Chime Level Adjustment 244

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTES

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument Panel Overview



Manual Transmission shown, Automatic Transmission similar

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The main components of your vehicle's instrument panel are the following:

A. Air Outlets. See *Outlet Adjustment on page 178*.

B. Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever. See *Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever on page 161*.

C. Instrument Panel Cluster. See *Instrument Panel Cluster on page 180*.

D. Hazard Warning Flasher Button. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 160*.

E. Passenger Side Airbag. See *Airbag System on page 76*.

F. Exterior Lamp Controls. See *Exterior Lamps on page 168*. Fog Lamps (If Equipped). See *Fog Lamps on page 171*. Exterior Cargo Lamps. See *Exterior Cargo Lamps on page 172*.

G. Parking Brake Release. See *Parking Brake on page 130*.

H. Horn. See *Horn on page 160*.

I. Traction Control Button or Four-Wheel Drive Buttons. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 253* and *Four-Wheel Drive on page 126*.

J. Audio System. See *Audio System(s) on page 205*.

K. Cigarette Lighter (If Equipped). See *Ashtray(s) and Cigarette Lighter on page 175*.

L. Climate Control System. See *Climate Control System on page 176*.

M. Accessory Power Outlet. See *Accessory Power Outlet(s) on page 174*.

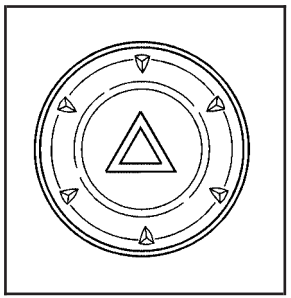
N. Passenger Air Bag Status Indicator. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 184*.

O. Glove Box. See *Glove Box on page 150*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Hazard Warning Flashers

The hazard warning flashers let you warn the police and others that you have a problem. The front and rear turn signal lamps will flash on and off.



The hazard warning flasher button is located on the instrument panel, between the two air vents in the center.

The hazard warning flashers work no matter what position the key is in, and even if the key is not in the ignition.

Press the button to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Press the button again to turn the flashers off.

When the hazard warning flashers are on, the turn signals will not work.

Other Warning Devices

If you carry reflective triangles, you can set one up at the side of the road about 300 feet (100 m) behind your vehicle.

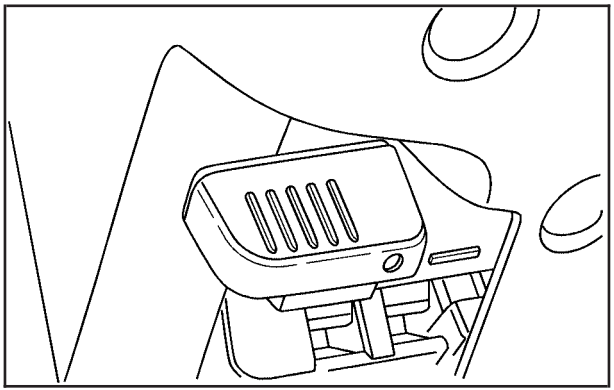
Horn

To sound the horn, press the horn symbol on the steering wheel pad.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tilt Wheel

A tilt wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. The tilt steering wheel can be raised to the highest level to allow more room for the driver to enter and exit the vehicle.

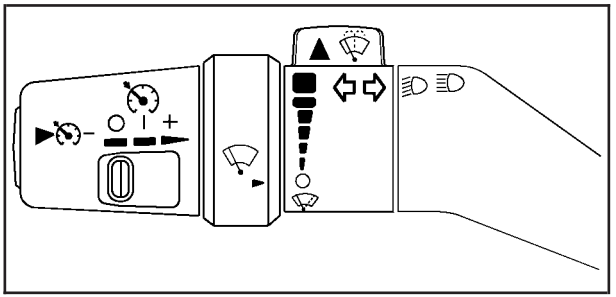


The tilt lever is located on the left side of the steering column, under the turn signal lever.

To tilt, hold the steering wheel and pull the tilt lever toward you. Move the wheel to a comfortable level, then release the tilt lever to lock the wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever



The lever on the left side of the steering column includes the following:

- Turn and Lane Change Signals. See *Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever on page 161*.
- Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer. See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 163*.
- Flash-to-Pass. See *Flash-to-Pass on page 163*.
- Windshield Wipers. See *Windshield Wipers on page 163*.
- Windshield Washer. See *Windshield Washer on page 164*.
- Cruise Control. See *Cruise Control on page 164*.

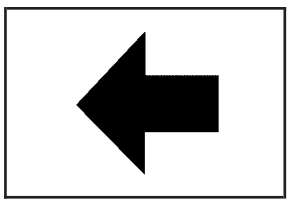
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turn and Lane-Change Signals

The turn signal has two upward (for right) and two downward (for left) positions. These positions allow you to signal a turn or a lane change.

To signal a turn, move the lever all the way up or down. When the turn is finished, the lever will automatically return to the off position.

To signal a lane change, raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash. Hold it there until the change is completed. The lever will return by itself when released.



An arrow on the instrument panel cluster will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change.

As you signal a turn or a lane change, if the arrows flash more quickly than normal, a signal bulb may be burned out and other drivers will not see your vehicle's turn signal.

If a bulb is burned out, replace it to help avoid an accident. If the arrows do not go on at all when signaling a turn, check for a burned-out bulb or a blown fuse. For bulb replacement, see *Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps on page 373*. For a blown fuse or circuit breaker, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 435.*

Turn Signal On Chime

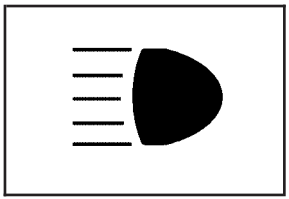
If a turn signal is left on for more than 3/4 of a mile (1.2 km), a chime will sound at each flash of the turn signal and the message TURN SIGNAL will also appear in the DIC. To turn the chime and message off, move the turn signal lever to the off position.

See "TURN SIGNAL" under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 200* for more information.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

(Headlamp High/Low Beam Changer): To change the headlamps from low to high beam, push the lever toward the instrument panel. To return to low-beam headlamps, pull the multifunction lever toward you. Then release it.



When the high beams are on, this indicator light on the instrument panel cluster will also be on.

Flash-to-Pass

This feature lets you use the high-beam headlamps to signal a driver in front of you that you want to pass. It works even if the headlamps are in the automatic position.

To use it, pull the turn signal lever toward you, then release it.

If your headlamps are in the automatic position or on low beam, your high-beam headlamps will turn on. They will stay on as long as you hold the lever toward you. The high-beam indicator on the instrument panel cluster will come on. Release the lever to return to normal operation.

Windshield Wipers

You control the windshield wipers by turning the band with the wiper symbol on it.

The windshield wipers work in all ignition positions, except off. This includes the Retained Access Power mode. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 117*.

(Mist): For a single wiping cycle, turn the band to mist. Hold it there until the wipers start. Then let go. The wipers will stop after one wipe. If you want more wipes, hold the band on mist longer.

(Delay): You can set the wiper speed for a long or short delay between wipes. This can be very useful in light rain or snow. Turn the band to choose the delay time. The closer to the top of the lever, the shorter the delay.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(Low Speed): For steady wiping at low speed, turn the band away from you to the first solid position past the delay settings.

(High Speed): For high-speed wiping, turn the band to the second solid position past the delay settings.

(Off): To stop the wipers, move the band to off.

Be sure to clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them. If they're frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. If your blades do become worn or damaged, get new blades or blade inserts.

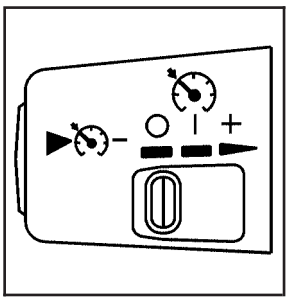
Windshield Washer

⚠ CAUTION:

In freezing weather, do not use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

(Washer Fluid): There is a paddle marked with the windshield washer symbol at the top of the multifunction lever. To spray washer fluid on the windshield, push the paddle. The wipers will clear the window and then either stop or return to your preset speed.

Cruise Control



The cruise control set button is located at the end of the multifunction lever.

(Off): Move the lever to this position to turn the system off.

(On): Move the lever to this position to turn the system on.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

+ (Resume/Accelerate): Move the lever to this position to make the vehicle accelerate or resume to a previously set speed.

▶ **(Set):** Press this button to set the speed.

With cruise control, the vehicle can maintain a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator. This can really help on long trips. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 25 mph (40 km/h).

Cruise control will not work if the parking brake is set, or if the master cylinder brake fluid level is low.

If the brakes are applied, the cruise control will shut off.

⚠ CAUTION:

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. So, do not use your cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

If your vehicle has the Traction Control System (TCS) and it begins to limit wheel spin while the cruise control is on, the cruise control will automatically disengage. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 253*. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, you can turn cruise control back on.

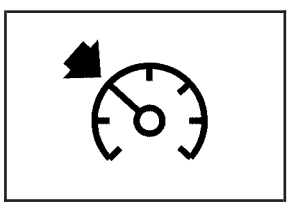
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting Cruise Control

⚠ CAUTION:

If you leave your cruise control on when you are not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you do not want to. You could be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.

1. Move the cruise control lever to the on position.
2. Get up to the speed you want.
3. Press the set button at the end of the lever and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.



The cruise symbol on the instrument panel will be lit when the cruise control is engaged.

Resuming a Set Speed

Suppose you set the cruise control to a desired speed and then you apply the brake. This turns off the cruise control. But it does not need to be reset.

Once you are going about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more, you can move the cruise control switch briefly from on to resume/accelerate.

The vehicle will go right back up to your chosen speed and stay there.

If you hold the lever at resume/accelerate the vehicle will keep going faster until you release the lever or apply the brake. Do not hold the lever at resume/accelerate if you do not want the vehicle to go faster.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

There are two ways to go to a higher speed:

- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the higher speed. Press the set button at the end of the lever, then release the button and the accelerator pedal. You will now cruise at the higher speed. If the accelerator pedal is held longer than 60 seconds, cruise control will turn off.
- Move the cruise lever from on to resume/accelerate. Hold it there until you get up to the speed desired, and then release the lever. To increase your speed in very small amounts, move the lever briefly to resume/accelerate.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

- Press and hold the set button until you reach the lower speed desired, then release it.
- To slow down in very small amounts, briefly press the set button.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the cruise control speed you set earlier.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control will work on hills depends upon the vehicle speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might want to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle speed. When going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep the vehicle speed down.
Of course, applying the brake turns off the cruise control. Many drivers find this to be too much trouble and do not use cruise control on steep hills.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Ending Cruise Control

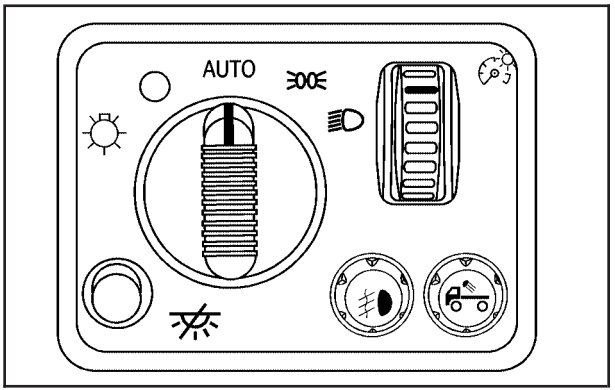
To turn off the cruise control, do one of the following:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Move the cruise control lever to off.
- Lightly tap or press the clutch, if you have a manual transmission.

Erasing Speed Memory

When you turn off the cruise control or the ignition, the cruise control set speed memory is erased.

Exterior Lamps



The control on the driver's side of the instrument panel operates the exterior lamps.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(Exterior Lamps): Turn the knob, located to the right of this symbol, to choose one of the four exterior lamp positions.

(Off): Turn the knob to this position to turn off all exterior lamps including the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL).

AUTO: Turn the knob to this position to automatically turn on the headlamps at normal brightness, together with the following:

- Sidemarker Lamps
- Taillamps
- Parking Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

See *Automatic Headlamp System on page 170* for more information.

(Parking Lamps): Turn the knob to this position to turn on the parking lamps, together with the following:

- Sidemarker Lamps
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

(Headlamps): Turn the knob to this position to turn on the headlamps, together with the previously listed lamps and lights.

You can switch the headlamps from low to high beam by pushing the turn signal/multifunction lever toward the instrument panel.

Headlamps on Reminder

If a door is open, a reminder chime will sound when the headlamps or parking lamps are manually turned on and your key is out of the ignition. To turn off the chime, turn the headlamp switch to off and then back on. In the automatic mode, the headlamps turn off once the ignition is in LOCK.

If your vehicle was first sold in Canada and the parking lamps are turned on manually, the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) will stay on.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, but they can be especially helpful in the short periods after dawn and before sunset. Fully functional daytime running lamps are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

The DRL system will come on when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on.
- The exterior lamps control is in AUTO.
- The transmission is not in PARK (P) if you have an automatic transmission.
- The light sensor determines it is daytime.

Your vehicle will have either the parking lamps or reduced intensity low beams used as the DRL. When the DRL are on, only those lamps will be on. The taillamps, sidemarkers, and other lamps will not be on. The instrument panel will not be lit up either.

When it begins to get dark, the headlamps will automatically switch from DRL to the regular headlamps.

As with any vehicle, you should turn on the regular headlamp system when you need it.

Automatic Headlamp System

When it is dark enough outside, the automatic headlamp system will turn on after the transmission has been shifted from PARK (P) to DRIVE (D). The headlamps, taillamps, sidemarker, parking lamps, roof marker lamps, and the instrument panel lights will turn on at normal brightness. The radio lights will become more dim when the headlights are off compared to when the headlights are on.

Your vehicle has a light sensor located on the top of the instrument panel. Be sure it is not covered, or the system will be on whenever the ignition is on.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage, heavy overcast weather, or a tunnel. This is normal.

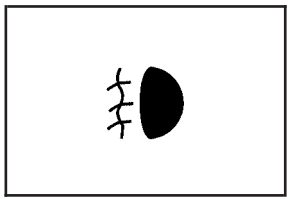
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

There is a delay in the transition between the daytime and nighttime operation of the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) and the automatic headlamp system so that driving under bridges or bright overhead street lights does not affect the system. The DRL and automatic headlamp system will only be affected when the light sensor detects a change in lighting lasting longer than the delay.

If you start your vehicle in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system will come on immediately. Once you leave the garage, it will take about one minute for the automatic headlamp system to change to DRL if it is light outside. During that delay, the instrument panel cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure the instrument panel brightness control is in the full bright position. See *Instrument Panel Brightness on page 172*.

Fog Lamps

If your vehicle has fog lamps, you can use them for better vision in foggy or misty conditions. Your parking lamps and/or low-beam headlamps must be on for your fog lamps to work.



The fog lamp button is located near the exterior lamps control.

Press the button to turn the fog lamps on while the headlamps or parking lamps are on. Press the button again to turn them off. An indicator light will glow in the button when the fog lamps are on.

Remember, fog lamps alone will not give off as much light as your headlamps. Never use your fog lamps in the dark without turning on the headlamps.

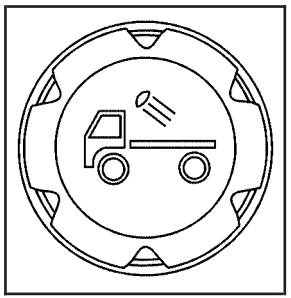
The fog lamps will go off whenever your high-beam headlamps come on. When the high beams go off, the fog lamps will come on again.

Some localities have laws that require the headlamps to be on along with the fog lamps.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Exterior Cargo Lamps

The cargo lamps can be used if more light is needed in the cargo area of the vehicle or in the top-box storage units.



Press this button, located on the driver side of the instrument panel near the exterior lamp control, to turn the cargo lamps on and off.

The dome lamps must be on for the cargo lamps to come on. See *Dome Lamp on page 173*.

Interior Lamps

The thumbwheel for the interior lamps is located next to the exterior lamps control. See *Exterior Lamps on page 168* for additional information on location.

Instrument Panel Brightness

(Instrument Panel Lights): Turn the thumbwheel up or down to brighten or dim the instrument panel lights and the radio display. The instrument panel lights, cluster, and radio display do not dim to complete darkness. The instrument panel light brightness control will only work if the headlamps or parking lamps are on. See *Exterior Lamps on page 168*.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Dome Lamp

The dome lamp will come on when a door is opened. They will shut off several seconds after all doors are closed.

You can also turn the dome lamp on manually by turning the interior lamps thumbwheel all the way up. In this position, the dome lamp will remain on whether a door is opened or closed. See *Interior Lamps on page 172* for additional information on location.

Dome Lamp Override

(Dome Override): Press this button, located below the exterior lamp control, to turn the dome lamp off even when a door is opened. See *Exterior Lamps on page 168* for more information on location.

To return the lamp to automatic operation, press the button again.

Exit Lighting

With exit lighting, the interior lamps will come on when you remove the key from the ignition. The lamps will not come on if the dome override button is pressed in.

Electric Power Management

The vehicle has Electric Power Management (EPM) that estimates the battery's temperature and state of charge. It then adjusts the voltage for best performance and extended life of the battery.

When the battery's state of charge is low, the voltage is raised slightly to quickly put the charge back in. When the state of charge is high, the voltage is lowered slightly to prevent overcharging. If the vehicle has a voltmeter gage, you may see the voltage move up or down. This is normal. If there is a problem, an alert will be displayed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The battery can be discharged at idle if the electrical loads are very high. This is true for all vehicles. This is because the generator (alternator) may not be spinning fast enough at idle to produce all the power that is needed for very high electrical loads.

A high electrical load occurs when several of the following loads are on: headlamps, high beams, fog lamps, rear window defogger, climate control fan at high speed, heated seats, engine cooling fans, trailer loads, and loads plugged into accessory power outlets.

Battery Run-Down Protection

This feature shuts off the dome lamp if it is left on for more than 20 minutes when the ignition is in LOCK. This will help prevent your battery from running down.

Accessory Power Outlet(s)

Your vehicle may have accessory power outlets.

With accessory power outlets you can plug in auxiliary electrical equipment such as a cellular telephone or CB radio.

Your vehicle may have two accessory power outlets located on the lower part of the instrument panel below the climate control system and there may be one located on the rear of the center console. A small cap must be pulled down to access an accessory power outlet. When not using an outlet be sure to cover it with the protective cap.

Notice: **Leaving electrical equipment on for extended periods will drain the battery. Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum amperage rating of 20 amperes.**

Certain electrical accessories may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could result in blown vehicle or adapter fuses. If you experience a problem, see your dealer for additional information on accessory power outlets.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **Adding any electrical equipment to your vehicle may damage it or keep other components from working as they should. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not use equipment exceeding maximum amperage rating of 20 amperes. Check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment.**

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment.

Notice: **Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug because the power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only.**

Ashtray(s) and Cigarette Lighter

Your vehicle may have an ashtray and cigarette lighter.

Your ashtray is located in your center console area. The ashtray can be removed for cleaning. When the ashtray is removed, this area can also be used as a cupholder.

Notice: **If you put papers, pins, or other flammable items in the ashtray, hot cigarettes or other smoking materials could ignite them and possibly damage your vehicle. Never put flammable items in the ashtray.**

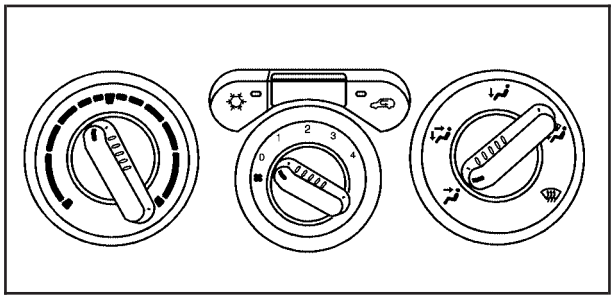
To use the lighter, press it in all the way, and let go. When it's ready, it will pop back out by itself.

Notice: **Holding a cigarette lighter in while it is heating will not allow the lighter to back away from the heating element when it is hot. Damage from overheating may occur to the lighter or heating element, or a fuse could be blown. Do not hold a cigarette lighter in while it is heating.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Climate Controls

Climate Control System



With this system you can control the heating, cooling, and ventilation for your vehicle.

Temperature Knob

The left knob on the control panel is used to adjust the temperature of the air in the vehicle. Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the temperature.

Fan Knob

(Fan): The center knob on the control panel is used to control the fan speed. Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed.

If the knob is set on “0” (zero), some outside air will still enter the vehicle and will be directed according to the position of the mode knob.

Mode Knob

The right knob on the control panel is used to direct the airflow inside your vehicle. Turn the knob to select one of the following modes:

(Vent): Select this mode to direct air to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Select this mode to direct approximately half of the air to the instrument panel outlets, and the remaining air to the floor outlets and the defroster and side window outlets. Cooler air is directed to the upper outlets and warmer air to the floor outlets.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(Floor): Select this mode to direct air to the floor outlets. Recirculation is disabled in this mode because interior window could fog under some conditions. If this occurs, see “Defogging and Defrosting” following.

Mode Buttons

(Recirculation): This mode recirculates air inside the cabin, and prevents outside air from coming in the vehicle. It can be used to prevent outside odors from entering your vehicle and cool the air inside your vehicle more quickly. Press this button to turn the recirculation mode on or off. An indicator light on the button will come on to let you know the recirculation mode is activated.

Recirculation is only available in the bi-level and vent modes. It should only be used while in bi-level and vent modes. Recirculation is not available, and the light will not come on or flash while in heat, floor, floor/defog, or defrost modes.

(Air Conditioning): Press this button to turn the air conditioning system on or off. An indicator light on the button will come on to let you know the air conditioning is activated. When the system is on, this setting cools and dehumidifies the air entering your vehicle.

The air conditioning will not function if the fan is turned off.

You may notice a slight change in engine performance when the air conditioning compressor shuts off and turns on again. This is normal. The system is designed to make adjustments to help with fuel economy while still maintaining the selected temperature.

The air conditioning system removes moisture from the air, so you may sometimes notice a small amount of water dripping underneath your vehicle while idling or after turning off the engine. This is normal.

Defogging and Defrosting

Fog on the inside of windows is a result of high humidity (moisture) condensing on the cool window glass. This can be minimized if the climate control system is used properly. There are two modes to clear fog or frost from your windshield and side windows. Use the defog mode to clear the windows of fog or moisture and warm the passengers. Use the defrost mode to remove fog or frost from the windshield more quickly. For best results, clear all snow and ice from the windshield before defrosting.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turn the mode knob on the climate control panel clockwise to select the defog or defrost modes.

(Floor/Defog): This mode directs the air to the windshield, the side window outlets, and to the floor outlets. When you select this mode, the system runs the air conditioning compressor unless the outside temperature is near freezing or below. Recirculation is not available in this mode.

(Defrost): This mode directs most of the air to the windshield, and the side window outlets. When you select this mode, the system runs the air conditioning compressor unless the outside temperature is near, or below freezing. Recirculation is not available in this mode.

Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.

Outlet Adjustment

Use the thumbwheel on the outlets to change the direction of the air flow.

Lift up or push down on the thumbwheel located in the center of the outlet to direct the air up or down, or slide the thumbwheel to the left or right to direct the airflow from side-to-side.

Operation Tips

- Clear away any ice, snow or leaves from the air inlets at the base of the windshield that may block the flow of air into your vehicle.
- Use of non-GM approved hood deflectors may adversely affect the performance of the system.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside of your vehicle more effectively.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators

This part describes the warning lights and gages that may be on your vehicle. The pictures will help you locate them.

Warning lights and gages can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to your warning lights and gages could also save you or others from injury.

Warning lights come on when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. As you will see in the details on the next few pages, some warning lights come on briefly when you start the engine just to let you know they are working. If you are familiar with this section, you should not be alarmed when this happens.

Gages can indicate when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. Often gages and warning lights work together to let you know when there is a problem with your vehicle.

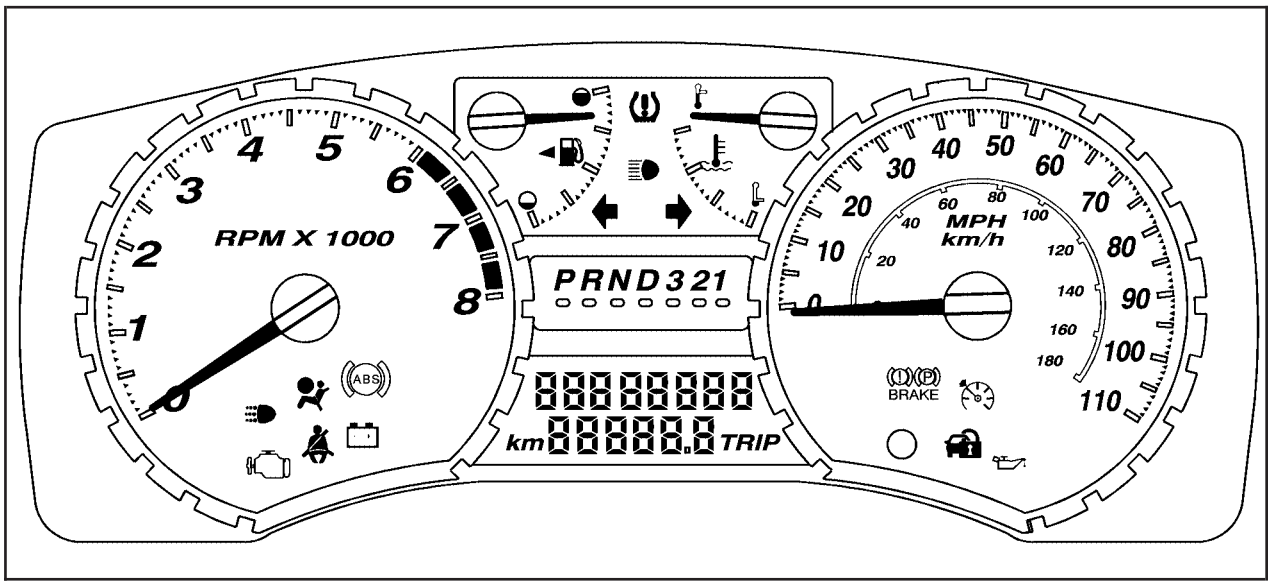
When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on when you are driving, or when one of the gages shows there may be a problem, check the section that tells you what to do about it. Please follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly — and even dangerous. So please get to know your warning lights and gages. They are a big help.

Your vehicle has a DIC that works along with the warning lights and gages. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 196* for more information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument Panel Cluster

Your instrument panel cluster is designed to let you know at a glance how your vehicle is running. You will know how fast you are going, about how much fuel you have used, and many other things you will need to know to drive safely and economically.



United States automatic transmission version shown, Canada similar

Speedometer and Odometer

Your speedometer lets you see your speed in both miles per hour (mph) and kilometers per hour (km/h).

Your odometer shows how far your vehicle has been driven, in either miles (used in the United States) or kilometers (used in Canada).

The odometer mileage can be checked without the vehicle running. Simply press the trip information stem. See “Odometer” under *DIC Controls and Displays on page 196* for more information.

You may wonder what happens if your vehicle needs a new odometer installed. If the new one can be set to the mileage total of the old odometer, then it must be. But if it cannot, then it is set at zero, and a label must be put on the driver’s door to show the old mileage reading when the new odometer was installed.

Trip Odometer

Your vehicle has a trip odometer that can tell you how far your vehicle has been driven since you last set the trip odometer to zero.

See “Trip Odometer” under *DIC Controls and Displays on page 196* for more information.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Notice: **If you operate the engine with the tachometer in the shaded warning area, your vehicle could be damaged, and the damages would not be covered by your warranty. Do not operate the engine with the tachometer in the shaded warning area.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the key is turned to ON or START, a chime will be provided for several seconds to remind people to buckle their safety belts. The driver safety belt light will also be provided and stay on for several seconds, then it will flash for several more. You should buckle your seat belt.

This chime and light will be repeated if the driver remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion.

If the driver's belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light will be provided.

Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light

Several seconds after the key is turned to ON or START, a chime will sound for several seconds to remind the front passenger to buckle their safety belt. This would only occur if the passenger airbag is enabled. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 86* for more information. The passenger safety belt light will also come on and stay on for several seconds, then it will flash for several more. You should have the passenger buckle their seat belt.

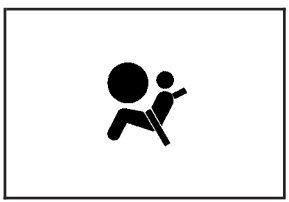
This chime and light will be repeated if the passenger remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion.

If the passenger's safety belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light will come on.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Airbag Readiness Light

There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel, which shows the airbag symbol. The system checks the airbag's electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the airbag sensors, the airbag modules, the wiring and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag systems, see *Airbag System on page 76*.



This light will come on when you start your vehicle, and it will flash for a few seconds. Then the light should go out. This means the system is ready.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or comes on when you are driving, your airbag system may not work properly. Have your vehicle serviced right away.

⚠ CAUTION:

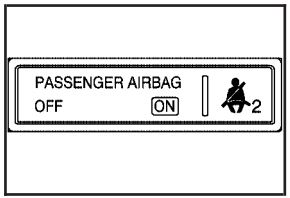
If the airbag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle, it means the airbag system may not be working properly. The airbags in your vehicle may not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have your vehicle serviced right away if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle.

The airbag readiness light should flash for a few seconds when you turn the ignition key to ON. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

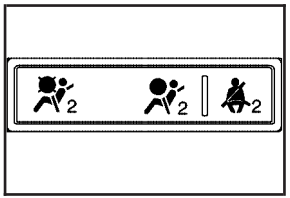
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

Your vehicle has the passenger sensing system. Your instrument panel has a passenger airbag status indicator.



United States



Canada

When the ignition key is turned to ON or START, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, or either the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the right front passenger's frontal airbag.

There is a label on your sun visor that says, "Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front." This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat, even if the airbag is off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If your vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, never put a child in a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger seat unless the passenger airbag status indicator shows off and the airbag is off. Here is why:

⚠ CAUTION:

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. We recommend that rear-facing child restraints be transported in vehicles with a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, whenever possible.

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the right front passenger's frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate).

⚠ CAUTION:

If the on indicator comes on when you have a rear-facing child restraint installed in the right front passenger's seat, it means that the passenger sensing system has not turned off the passenger's frontal airbag. A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. Do not use a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger's seat if the airbag is turned on.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

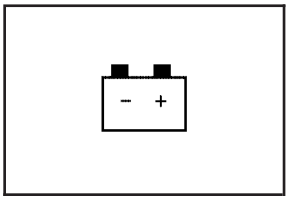
If the word OFF or the off symbol is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal airbag. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 86* for more on this, including important safety information.

If, after several seconds, all status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer for service.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the off indicator and the airbag readiness light ever come on together, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. If this ever happens, have the vehicle serviced promptly, because an adult-size person sitting in the right front passenger seat may not have the protection of the frontal airbag. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 183*.

Battery Warning Light



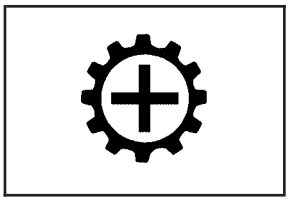
This light will come on briefly when you start the vehicle, as a check to show you it is working; then it should go out.

If it stays on, or comes on while you are driving, you may have a problem with the electrical charging system. Have it checked right away. Driving while this light is on could drain your battery and result in a vehicle that may stall. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 200* for more information.

If you must drive a short distance with the light on, be certain to turn off all your accessories, such as the radio and climate control system.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Up-Shift Light (Manual Transmission)



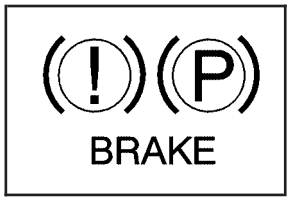
This light appears when you need to shift to the next higher gear on a manual transmission vehicle.

Shifting when the indicator light is on will help you get the best fuel economy. See “Up-Shift Light” under *Manual Transmission Operation on page 124* for more information.

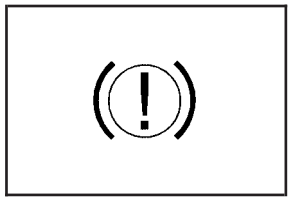
Brake System Warning Light

Your vehicle’s hydraulic brake system is divided into two parts. If one part is not working, the other part can still work and stop you. For good braking, though, you need both parts working well.

If the warning light comes on, there could be a brake problem. Have your brake system inspected right away.



United States



Canada

This light should come on briefly when you turn the ignition key to ON. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

When the ignition is on, the brake system warning light will also come on when you set your parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 130* for more information. The light will stay on if your parking brake does not release fully. If it stays on after your parking brake is fully released, it means you have a brake problem.

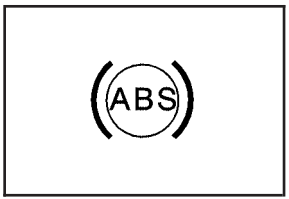
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the light comes on while you are driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. You may notice that the pedal is harder to push, or the pedal may go closer to the floor. It may take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing Your Vehicle on page 297*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Your brake system may not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to an accident. If the light is still on after you have pulled off the road and stopped carefully, have the vehicle towed for service.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light



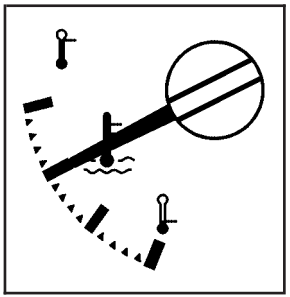
With the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), this light will come on briefly when you start your engine to show it is working. Then it will turn off. This is normal.

If the light stays on, or comes on when you are driving, your vehicle needs service. If the regular brake system warning light is not on, you still have brakes, but you do not have anti-lock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on, you do not have anti-lock brakes and there is a problem with your regular brakes. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 187*.

The ABS warning light should come on briefly when you turn the ignition key to ON. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Coolant Temperature Gage

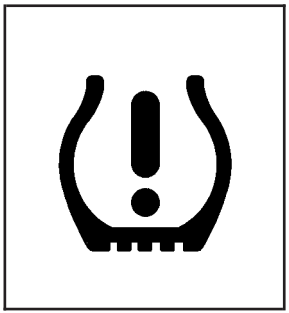


This gage shows the engine coolant temperature.

If the gage pointer is near the top of the gage, the engine is too hot. It means that your engine coolant has overheated. If you have been operating your vehicle under normal driving conditions, you should pull off the road, stop your vehicle and turn off the engine as soon as possible.

See *Engine Overheating on page 348* for more information.

Tire Pressure Light



This light should come on briefly when you turn the ignition to ON.

This light will also come on when one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated. A LOW TIRE message will also appear in the Driver Information Center (DIC), see *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 200* for more information.

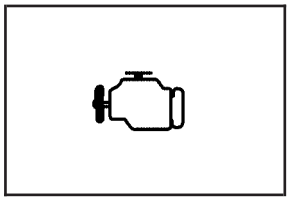
Stop and check your tires as soon as it is safe to do so. If underinflated, inflate to the proper pressure. See *Tires on page 377* for more information.

This light will flash for 60 seconds and then turn on solid if a problem is detected with the Tire Pressure Monitor system. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 386* for more information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Check Engine Light



Your vehicle has a computer which monitors operation of the fuel, ignition, and emission control systems.

This system is called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) and is intended to assure that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment. The check engine light comes on to indicate that there is a problem and service is required. Malfunctions often will be indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. This may prevent more serious damage to your vehicle. This system is also designed to assist your service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

Notice: **If you keep driving your vehicle with this light on, after awhile, your emission controls may not work as well, your fuel economy may not be as good, and your engine may not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that may not be covered by your warranty.**

Notice: **Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of your vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect your vehicle's emission controls and may cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty. This may also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 323*.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

This light should come on, as a check to show you it is working, when the ignition is on and the engine is not running. If the light does not come on, have it repaired. This light will also come on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

- **Light Flashing** — A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and may damage the emission control system on your vehicle. Diagnosis and service may be required.
- **Light On Steady** — An emission control system malfunction has been detected on your vehicle. Diagnosis and service may be required.

If the Light is Flashing

The following may prevent more serious damage to your vehicle:

- Reducing vehicle speed
- Avoiding hard accelerations
- Avoiding steep uphill grades
- If you are towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible

If the light stops flashing and remains on steady, see “If the Light Is On Steady” following.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park your vehicle. Turn the key off, wait at least 10 seconds and restart the engine. If the light remains on steady, see “If the Light Is On Steady” following. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps, and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

If the Light Is On Steady

You may be able to correct the emission system malfunction by considering the following:

Did you recently put fuel into your vehicle?

If so, reinstall the fuel cap, making sure to fully install the cap. See *Filling the Tank on page 328*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap will allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Did you just drive through a deep puddle of water?

If so, your electrical system may be wet. The condition will usually be corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.

Have you recently changed brands of fuel?

If so, be sure to fuel your vehicle with quality fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 325*. Poor fuel quality will cause your engine not to run as efficiently as designed. You may notice this as stalling after start-up, stalling when you put the vehicle into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration. (These conditions may go away once the engine is warmed up.) This will be detected by the system and cause the light to turn on.

If you experience one or more of these conditions, change the fuel brand you use. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

If none of the above steps have made the light turn off, your dealer can check the vehicle. Your dealer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that may have developed.

Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

Some state/provincial and local governments have or may begin programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.

Here are some things you need to know to help your vehicle pass an inspection:

Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the check engine light is on or not working properly.

Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the OBD (on-board diagnostic) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed by the system. The vehicle would be considered not ready for inspection. This can happen if you have recently replaced your battery or if your battery has run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This may take several days of routine driving. If you have done this and your vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD system readiness, your dealer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

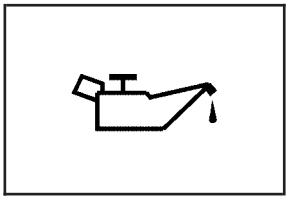
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Oil Pressure Light

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not keep driving if the oil pressure is low. If you do, your engine can become so hot that it catches fire. You or others could be burned. Check your oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Lack of proper engine oil maintenance may damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule in this manual for changing engine oil.**



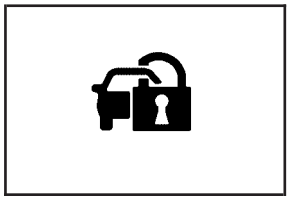
The light will come on when you turn your key to ON or START.

It goes off once you start your engine. That is a check to be sure the light works. If it does not come on, be sure to have it fixed so it will be there to warn you if something goes wrong.

When the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and it might have some other system problem. See *Engine Oil on page 333* and “OIL” under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 200* for more information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Security Light



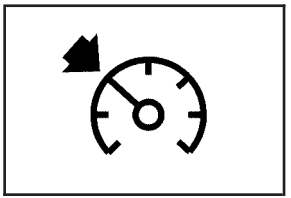
This light will come on briefly when you turn the key to START. The light will stay on until the engine starts.

If the ignition is turned on, and the light flashes, the Passlock® system has entered a tamper mode. If the vehicle fails to start, see *Passlock® on page 114*.

If the light comes on continuously while driving and stays on, there may be a problem with the Passlock® system. Your vehicle will not be protected by Passlock®, and you should see your dealer.

Also, see *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 113* for additional information regarding the security light.

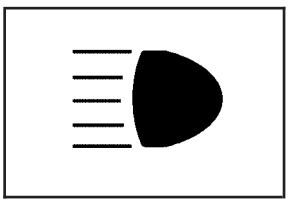
Cruise Control Light



This light comes on whenever you set the cruise control.

The light goes out when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control on page 164* for more information.

Highbeam On Light

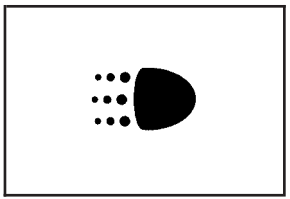


This light comes on whenever the high-beam headlamps are on.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 163* for more information.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

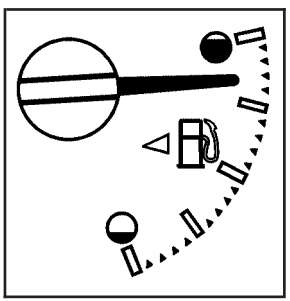
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) Indicator Light



This light turns on whenever the Daytime Running Lamps are on.

See *Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) on page 170* for more information.

Fuel Gage



When the ignition is on, the fuel gage tells you about how much fuel you have remaining in the fuel tank.

Here are four things that some owners ask about. None of these indicate a problem with your fuel gage:

- At the gas station, the gas pump shuts off before the gage reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the gage indicated. For example, the gage may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gage moves a little when you turn a corner or speed up.
- The gage does not go back to empty when you turn off the ignition.

When the fuel in the fuel tank is low, you will see a LOW FUEL message on the Driver Information Center (DIC) display. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 200* for more information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driver Information Center (DIC)

The Driver Information Center (DIC) displays information such as the trip odometer, personalization features, and warning messages. The DIC display is located on the instrument panel cluster.

DIC Controls and Displays

The Driver Information Center (DIC) comes on when the ignition is on.

If a problem is detected, a warning message will appear on the display. Pressing and releasing the trip odometer reset stem on the DIC will acknowledge some current warnings or service messages. Some messages will only clear after the required action has been taken.

The DIC has different modes which can be accessed by pressing the trip odometer reset stem on the DIC. These modes are explained in the following section. The DIC trip odometer reset stem is located on the instrument panel cluster next to the DIC display. To scroll through the available functions, press and release the reset stem.

Trip Information

Odometer

The odometer is automatically displayed on the DIC when you start the vehicle. The odometer shows the total distance the vehicle has been driven in either miles for the United States or kilometers for Canada.

Trip Odometer

Press and release the reset stem until TRIP appears on the DIC display. The trip odometer shows the current distance traveled since the last reset of the trip odometer in either miles for the United States or kilometers for Canada.

Press and hold the reset stem for about four seconds to reset the trip odometer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Oil Life System

With the engine off, turn the key to ON and then press the reset stem until OIL LIFE RESET appears — alternating between OIL LIFE and RESET — on the DIC display. The CHANGE OIL message will alert you to change your oil on a schedule consistent with your driving conditions. Always reset the OIL LIFE message after an oil change. To reset the message, see *Engine Oil Life System on page 336*.

In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule in this manual. See *Engine Oil on page 333* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 445* for more information.

Language

This feature allows you to choose the language in which the DIC display will show information.

To set your choice for this feature, perform the following steps:

1. With the engine off, turn the key to ON.
2. Close all doors and make sure that the DOORS message is not displayed in the DIC.
3. Press and release the reset stem until the language is shown on the DIC display.
4. To view the next available language, press and hold the reset stem for about two seconds. Release the reset stem and press and hold again to view each language. You can choose from English (default), Spanish, or French.
5. Once the desired language is shown on the DIC display, briefly press the reset stem to set your choice.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Door Locks

This feature allows you to program your door locks to a preferred setting.

To set your choice for this feature, perform the following steps:

1. With the engine off, turn the key to LOCK. Do not remove the key from the ignition.
2. Press and hold the power door lock button for about three seconds until the DIC display shows the current door lock mode.
3. To view the next available mode, press and hold the reset stem for about two seconds. Release the reset stem and press and hold again to view each mode.
4. Once the desired mode is shown on the DIC display, briefly press the reset stem to set your choice. The DIC display will then clear.

The following are the available modes:

Lock 1 (default): On vehicles with an automatic transmission, this mode locks all of the doors when the vehicle is shifted out of PARK (P) and unlocks all of the doors when the vehicle is shifted into PARK (P).

On vehicles with a manual transmission, this mode locks all of the doors when the vehicle speed is greater than 15 mph (24 km/h) and unlocks all of the doors when the key is removed from the ignition.

Lock 2: On vehicles with an automatic transmission, this mode locks all of the doors when the vehicle is shifted out of PARK (P) and unlocks the driver's door when the vehicle is shifted into PARK (P).

On vehicles with a manual transmission, this mode locks all of the doors when the vehicle speed is greater than 15 mph (24 km/h) and unlocks the driver's door when the key is removed from the ignition.

Lock 3: On vehicles with an automatic transmission, this mode locks all of the doors when the vehicle is shifted out of PARK (P). The doors will not automatically unlock.

On vehicles with a manual transmission, this mode locks all of the doors when the vehicle speed is greater than 15 mph (24 km/h). The doors will not automatically unlock.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Feedback

This feature allows you to program your Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) feedback to a preferred setting.

To set your choice for this feature, perform the following steps:

1. With the engine off, turn the key to LOCK. Do not remove the key from the ignition.
2. Press and hold the lock and unlock buttons on the RKE transmitter at the same time. Hold both buttons until the DIC display shows the current RKE feedback mode.
3. To view the next available mode, press and hold the reset stem for about two seconds. Release the reset stem and press and hold again to view each mode.
4. Once the desired mode is shown on the DIC display, briefly press the reset stem to set your choice. The DIC display will then clear.

The following are the available modes:

RFA 1 (default): This mode flashes the parking lamps when you press the lock or unlock buttons on the RKE transmitter.

RFA 2: This mode flashes the parking lamps and sounds the horn when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter. This mode also flashes the parking lamps when you press the unlock button on the RKE transmitter.

RFA 3: This mode flashes the parking lamps and sounds the horn when you press the lock or unlock buttons on the RKE transmitter.

RFA 4: This mode disables RKE feedback. There will be no feedback when you press the lock or unlock buttons on the RKE transmitter.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DIC Warnings and Messages

Messages are displayed on the DIC to notify the driver that the status of the vehicle has changed and that some action may be needed by the driver to correct the condition. Multiple messages may appear one after another. The messages are displayed for four seconds each.

Some messages may not require immediate action, but you should press and release the trip odometer reset stem to acknowledge that you received the messages and to clear them from the display. Each message must be acknowledged individually.

Some messages cannot be cleared from the DIC display because they are more urgent. These messages require action before they can be cleared. You should take any messages that appear on the display seriously and remember that clearing the messages will only make the messages disappear, not correct the problem.

The following are the possible messages that can be displayed and some information about them.

AC (Air Conditioning) OFF

This message displays when the engine coolant temperature is too high and the air conditioning in your vehicle needs to be turned off. See *Engine Overheating on page 348* and *Climate Control System on page 176* for more information. This message displays along with the ENG HOT message.

ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System) FAULT

This message displays if there is a problem with the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS). Check the ABS as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Brakes on page 357* and *Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light on page 188* for more information. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

BRAKES

This message displays if there is a problem with the brakes. Check the brakes as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Brakes on page 357* and *Brake System Warning Light on page 187* for more information. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

CHANGE OIL

This message displays when the oil needs to be changed. Check the oil in your vehicle as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Engine Oil on page 333* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 445* for more information. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

DOORS

This message displays when one or more of the doors is ajar. Check all the doors on your vehicle to make sure they are closed. The message clears from the display after all of the doors are closed.

ENG (Engine) HOT

This message displays when the engine coolant temperature is hot. Check the engine coolant temperature gage. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 189*. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer as soon as possible if you suspect the engine is overheating. See *Engine Overheating on page 348* for more information.

FLUID

This message displays if the brake fluid is low. Check the brake fluid as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Brakes on page 357* for more information. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

FUEL CAP

This message displays if the vehicle's fuel cap is either off or loose. Pull over as soon as possible and check to see if the fuel cap is secure. You may also see the check engine light on the instrument panel cluster. If the check engine light does come on when the fuel cap was loose, it may take a few driving trips before the light turns off. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 190* for more information if the light still remains on. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

LOW FUEL

This message displays if the level of fuel in the vehicle is low. Also check the fuel gage. See *Fuel Gage on page 195* for more information. Refill the fuel tank as soon as possible.

LOW TIRE

This message displays if a low tire pressure is detected in any of the vehicle's tires. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display. The message appears at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. See *Tires on page 377* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 385* for more information on tires and the correct inflation pressures.

LOW TRAC (Traction)

If your vehicle has the Traction Control System (TCS), this message displays when a low traction condition is detected. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 253* for more information. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

OIL

This message displays when the oil pressure is low. See *Oil Pressure Light on page 193* and *Engine Oil on page 333* for more information.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

PARK BRK (Brake)

This message displays when the parking brake is set. See *Parking Brake on page 130* and *Brake System Warning Light on page 187* for more information. The message clears from the display after the parking brake is released or by pressing and releasing the reset stem.

REDUCED POWER

This message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

SERV (Service) 4WD (Four-Wheel Drive)

This message displays when there is a problem with the transfer case control system. Check the transfer case on your vehicle and have it serviced by your dealer. See *Four-Wheel Drive on page 126* for more information about the transfer case. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

SERV (Service) TPM (Tire Pressure Monitor)

This message displays if any of the tire monitor sensors have malfunctioned, if the tire monitor sensors have not been programmed, or if the recommended tire pressures are not programmed. The tire pressure light also flashes for one minute and then turns on solid until the condition goes away or the system is serviced. See *Tire Pressure Light on page 189*. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display. This message appears at each ignition cycle until the system is serviced. See your dealer for service.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 386* for more information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SERV (Service) VEH (Vehicle)

This message displays if your vehicle needs service. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer as soon as possible.

SERVICE CHARG (Charge) SYS (System)

This message displays if there is a problem with the battery charging system. Under certain conditions, the battery warning light may also turn on in the instrument panel cluster. See *Battery Warning Light on page 186*. The battery will not be charging at an optimal rate and the vehicle will lose the ability to enter the fuel economy mode. The vehicle is safe to drive, however have the electrical system checked by your dealer. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

TRACTION FAULT

If your vehicle has the Traction Control System (TCS), this message may display if there is a problem with the TCS. Check the TCS as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 253* for more information. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

TURN SIGNAL

This message displays when the turn signal is on for about 0.75 miles (1.2 km) of travel. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Audio System(s)

Determine which radio your vehicle has and then read the pages following to familiarize yourself with its features.

Driving without distraction is a necessity for a safer driving experience. See *Defensive Driving on page 246*. By taking a few moments to read this manual and get familiar with your vehicle's audio system, you can use it with less effort, as well as take advantage of its features. While your vehicle is parked, set up your audio system by presetting your favorite radio stations, setting the tone and adjusting the speakers. Then, when driving conditions permit, you can tune to your favorite stations using the presets and steering wheel controls if the vehicle has them.

⚠ CAUTION:

This system provides you with a far greater access to audio stations and song listings. Giving extended attention to entertainment tasks while driving can cause a crash and you or others can be injured or killed. Always keep your eyes on the road and your mind on the drive — avoid engaging in extended searching while driving.

Keeping your mind on the drive is important for safe driving. For more information, see *Defensive Driving on page 246*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Here are some ways in which you can help avoid distraction while driving.

While your vehicle is parked:

- Familiarize yourself with all of its controls.
- Familiarize yourself with its operation.
- Set up your audio system by presetting your favorite radio stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers. Then, when driving conditions permit, you can tune to your favorite radio stations using the presets and steering wheel controls if the vehicle has them.

Notice: **Before adding any sound equipment to your vehicle, such as an audio system, CD player, CB radio, mobile telephone, or two-way radio, make sure that it can be added by checking with your dealer. Also, check federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone units. If sound equipment can be added, it is very important to do it properly. Added sound equipment may interfere with the operation of your vehicle's engine, radio, or other systems, and even damage them. Your vehicle's systems may interfere with the operation of sound equipment that has been added.**

Notice: **The chime signals related to safety belts, parking brake, and other functions of your vehicle operate through the radio/ entertainment system. If that equipment is replaced or additional equipment is added to your vehicle, the chimes may not work. Make sure that replacement or additional equipment is compatible with your vehicle before installing it. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 323*.**

Setting the Time for Radios without Radio Data Systems (RDS)

Press and hold HR (hour) until the correct hour appears on the display. Press and hold MIN (minute) until the correct minute appears on the display. There is an initial two-second delay before the clock goes into time-set mode. Display the time with the ignition off, by pressing RCL (recall), HR, or MIN.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting the Time for Radios with Radio Data Systems (RDS)

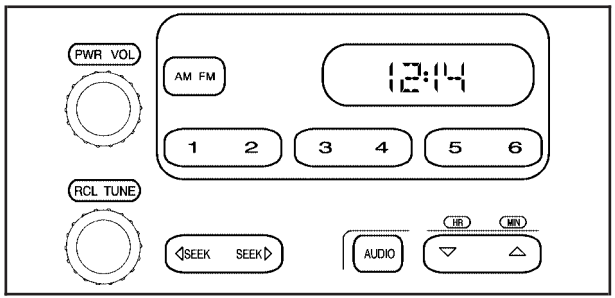
The radio may have a button marked with an H or HR to represent hours and an M or MN to represent minutes.

Press and hold the hour button until the correct hour appears on the display. Press and hold the minute button until the correct minute appears on the display. The time can be set with the ignition on or off.

To synchronize the time with an FM station broadcasting Radio Data System (RDS) information, press and hold the hour and minute buttons at the same time until RDS TIME appears on the display. To accept this time, press and hold the hour and minute buttons, at the same time, for another two seconds. If the time is not available from the station, NO UPDAT (update) will appear on the display.

RDS time is broadcast once a minute. After tuning to an RDS broadcast station, it may take a few minutes for the time to update.

AM-FM Radio



Playing the Radio

PWR (Power): Press this knob to turn the system on and off.

VOL (Volume): Turn this knob clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or to decrease the volume.

RCL (Recall): Press this knob to switch the display between the radio station frequency, band, and the time. When the ignition is off, press this knob to display the time.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Finding a Station

AM FM: Press this button to switch between FM1, FM2, or AM. The selection displays.

TUNE: Turn this knob to select radio stations.

◁ **SEEK** ▷ **:** Press the right or the left arrow to go to the next or to the previous station and stay there.

To scan stations, press and hold either SEEK arrow for two seconds until a beep sounds. The radio goes to a station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next station. Press either SEEK arrow again to stop scanning.

To scan preset stations, press and hold either SEEK arrow for more than four seconds until two beeps sound. The radio goes to the first preset station stored on the pushbuttons, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next preset station. Press either SEEK arrow again to stop scanning presets.

The radio only seeks and scans stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

Setting Preset Stations

Up to 18 stations (six FM1, six FM2, and six AM) can be programmed on the six numbered pushbuttons, by performing the following steps:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press AM FM to select FM1, FM2, or AM.
3. Tune in the desired station.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until a beep sounds. When that numbered pushbutton is pressed, the station that was set, returns.
5. Repeat Steps 2 through 4 for each pushbutton.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting the Tone (Bass/Treble)

AUDIO: To adjust bass or treble, press and release AUDIO until BAS (bass) or TRE (treble) displays. Then press and hold the up or the down arrow to increase or to decrease the tone. If a station is weak or has static, decrease the treble.

To adjust bass or treble to the middle position, select BAS (bass) or TRE (treble). Then press and hold AUDIO for more than two seconds until a beep sounds. B (balance) and a zero or T (treble) and a zero displays.

To adjust both tone controls and both speaker controls to the middle position, first exit out of audio mode by pressing another button, causing the radio to perform that function or wait five seconds for the display to return to time of day. Then press and hold AUDIO for more than two seconds until a beep sounds. CEN (center) displays.

Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade)

AUDIO: To adjust the balance between the right and the left speakers, press and release AUDIO until BAL (balance) displays. Then press and hold the up or the down arrow to move the sound toward the right or the left speakers.

To adjust the fade between the front and the rear speakers, press and release AUDIO until FAD (fade) displays. Then press and hold the up or the down arrow to move the sound toward the front or the rear speakers.

To adjust balance or fade to the middle position, select BAL or FAD. Then press and hold AUDIO for more than two seconds until a beep sounds. B (balance) and a zero or F (fade) and a zero displays.

To adjust both tone controls and both speaker controls to the middle position, first exit out of audio mode by pressing another button, causing the radio to perform that function or wait five seconds for the display to return to time of day. Then press and hold AUDIO for more than two seconds until a beep sounds. CEN (center) displays.

Fade might not be available if the vehicle is a regular cab model.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

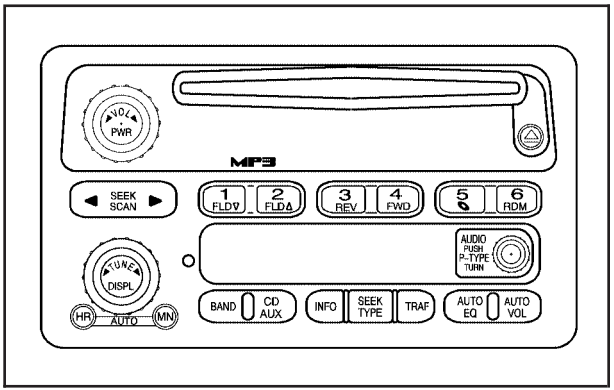
Radio Messages

CAL (Calibrated): The audio system has been calibrated for your vehicle from the factory. If CAL displays it means that the radio has not been configured properly for your vehicle and must be returned to your dealer for service.

LOC (Locked): This message is displayed when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer.

Radio with CD (MP3)



Radio Data System (RDS)

The audio system has a Radio Data System (RDS). RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

With RDS, the radio can do the following:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming
- Receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies
- Display messages from radio stations
- Seek to stations with traffic announcements

This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. In rare cases, a radio station may broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

While the radio is tuned to an RDS station, the station name or call letters appear on the display instead of the frequency. RDS stations may also provide the time of day, a program type (PTY) for current programming, and the name of the program being broadcast.

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM™ is a satellite radio service that is based in the 48 contiguous United States and Canada. XM™ offers a large variety of coast-to-coast channels including music, news, sports, talk, traffic/weather (U.S. subscribers), and children's programming. XM™ provides digital quality audio and text information that includes song title and artist name. A service fee is required in order to receive the XM™ service. For more information, contact XM™; In the U.S. at www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-852-XMXM (9696) or in Canada at www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-GET-XMSR (438-9677).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing the Radio

PWR (Power): Press this knob to turn the system on and off.

◁ **VOL** ▷ **(Volume):** Turn this knob to increase or to decrease the volume.

DISPL (Display): When the ignition is turned off, press this knob to display the time.

For RDS, press the DISPL knob to change what appears on the display while using RDS. The display options are station name, RDS station frequency, PTY (program type), and the name of the program (if available).

For XM™ (if equipped), press the DISPL knob while in XM™ mode to retrieve four different categories of information related to the current song or channel: Artist, Song Title, Category or PTY, Channel Number/Channel Name.

To change the default on the display, press the DISPL knob until you see the desired display, then press and hold this knob for two seconds. The radio produces one beep. The selected display is now the default.

AUTO VOL (Automatic Volume): Automatic volume automatically adjusts the audio system to make up for road and wind noise as you drive.

Set the volume at the desired level. Press this button to select LOW, MEDIUM, or HIGH. AVOL appears on the display. Each higher setting allows for more volume compensation at faster vehicle speeds. Then as you drive, automatic volume increases the volume, as necessary, to overcome noise at any speed. The volume level should always sound the same to you as you drive. NONE appears on the display if the radio cannot determine the vehicle speed. To turn automatic volume off, press this button until OFF appears on the display.

Finding a Station

BAND: Press this button to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (if equipped). The display shows the selection.

◁ **TUNE** ▷ **:** Turn this knob to select radio stations.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

◀ **SEEK** ▶**:** Press the right or the left arrow to go to the next or to the previous station and stay there.

The radio only seeks stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

◀ **SCAN** ▶**:** Press and hold either arrow for more than two seconds. SCAN appears on the display and the radio produces one beep. The radio goes to a station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next station. Press either arrow again or one of the pushbuttons to stop scanning presets.

To scan preset stations, press and hold either arrow for more than four seconds. PSCN appears on the display and the radio produces one beep. The radio goes to a preset station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next preset station. Press either arrow again or one of the pushbuttons to stop scanning presets.

The radio only scans stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

Setting Preset Stations

Up to 30 stations (six FM1, six FM2, and six AM, six XM1 and six XM2 (if equipped)), can be programmed on the six numbered pushbuttons, by performing the following steps:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press BAND to select FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2.
3. Tune in the desired station.
4. Press AUTO EQ to select the equalization.
5. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Whenever that numbered pushbutton is pressed, the station that was set returns and the equalization that was selected is stored for that pushbutton.
6. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting the Tone (Bass/Treble)

AUDIO: Push and release the AUDIO knob until BASS or TREB appears on the display. Turn the knob to increase or to decrease. The tone display shows the bass or the treble level. If a station is weak or has static, decrease the treble.

To adjust the bass and the treble to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob. A beep will sound.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control displays. ALL CENTERED appears on the display and you will hear a beep.

AUTO EQ (Automatic Equalization): Press this button to select customized equalization settings designed for country/western, jazz, talk, pop, rock, and classical.

To return the bass and treble to the manual mode, push and release the AUTO EQ button until CUSTOM appears on the display.

Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade)

AUDIO: To adjust the balance between the right and the left speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until BAL (balance) appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the right or the left speakers.

To adjust the fade between the front and the rear speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until FADE appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the front or the rear speakers.

To adjust the balance or the fade to the middle position, push the AUDIO knob to select BAL or FADE, then push it again and hold it until you hear one beep.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control is displayed. ALL CENTERED appears on the display and you will hear a beep.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Finding a Program Type (PTY) Station (RDS and XM™)

To select and find a desired PTY perform the following:

1. Turn the P-TYPE knob to activate program type select mode. TYPE and a PTY appears on the display.
2. Turn the P-TYPE knob again, to select a PTY.
3. Once the desired PTY displays, press the SEEK TYPE button to select and to take you to the PTY's first station.
4. To go to another station within that PTY, press the SEEK TYPE button twice to display the PTY and then go to another station.
5. Press P-TYPE knob to exit program type select mode.

   IF PTY disappears on the display, go back to Step 1.

If both PTY and TRAF (traffic) are on, the radio searches for stations with the selected PTY and traffic announcements.

If the radio cannot find the desired program type, NONE appears on the display and the radio returns to the last tuned station.

BAND (AF– Alternate Frequency): Alternate frequency lets the radio switch to a stronger station with the same program type. To turn alternate frequency on, press and hold BAND for two seconds. AF ON appears on the display. The radio could switch to stations with a stronger frequency.

To turn alternate frequency off, press and hold BAND again for two seconds. AF OFF appears on the display. The radio does not switch to other stations.

This function does not apply for XM™ Satellite Radio Service.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

RDS Messages

ALERT!: Alert warns of local or national emergencies. When an alert announcement comes on the current radio station, ALERT! appears on the display. You will hear the announcement, even if the volume is low or a CD is playing. If a CD is playing, play stops during the announcement. Alert announcements cannot be turned off.

ALERT! is not affected by tests of the emergency broadcast system. This feature is not supported by all RDS stations.

INFO (Information): If the current station has a message, the information symbol appears on the display. Press this button to see the message. The message may display the artist, song title, call in phone numbers, etc.

If the entire message is not displayed, parts of the message appears every three seconds. To scroll through the message, press and release the INFO button. A new group of words appears on the display after every press of this button. Once the complete message has been displayed, the information symbol disappears from the display until another new message is received. The last message can be displayed by pressing the INFO button. The last message stays on the display until a new message is received or the radio is tuned to a different station.

When a message is not available from a station, NO INFO appears on the display.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

TRAF (Traffic): If TRAF appears on the display, the tuned station broadcasts traffic announcements. When a traffic announcement is broadcast on this station you will hear it.

If the station does not broadcast traffic announcements, press the TRAF button and the radio seeks to a station that does. When a station that broadcasts traffic announcements is found, the radio stops seeking and TRAF appears on the display. If no station is found that broadcasts traffic announcements, NO TRAF appears on the display.

If TRAF is on the display, press the TRAF button to turn off the traffic announcements.

The radio plays the traffic announcement if the volume is low. The radio interrupts the play of a CD if the last tuned station broadcasts traffic announcements.

This function does not apply to XM™ Satellite Radio Service.

Radio Messages

CAL ERR (Calibration Error): The audio system has been calibrated for your vehicle from the factory. If CAL ERR appears on the display it means that the radio has not been configured properly for your vehicle and it must be returned to your dealer for service.

LOCKED: This message displays when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up. Take your vehicle to your dealer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer.

Radio Messages for XM™ Only

See *XM Radio Messages on page 240* later in this section for further detail.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing a CD

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls it in, and READING appears on the display. The CD should begin playing. If you want to insert a CD with the ignition off, first press the eject button or the DISPL knob.

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD in the player it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts to play where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

When the CD is inserted, the CD symbol appears on the display. As each new track starts to play, the track number appears on the display.

The CD player can play the smaller 3 inch (8 cm) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled.

There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the bottom surface of the CD. If the surface of the CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD will not play properly. If the surface of the CD is soiled, see *Care of Your CDs on page 243* for more information.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD.

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen.

Notice: **If you add any label to a CD, insert more than one CD into the slot at a time, or attempt to play scratched or damaged CDs, you could damage the CD player. When using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.**

If an error appears on the display, see “CD Messages” later in this section.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

1 FLD ▽ (Previous): This button is inactive when playing a CD.

2 FLD △ (Next): This button is inactive when playing a CD.

3 REV (Reverse): Press and hold this pushbutton to reverse quickly within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to reverse at 10 times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to reverse at 20 times the normal playing speed. Release this pushbutton to play the passage. ET (elapsed time) and the elapsed time of the track appears on the display.

4 FWD (Forward): Press and hold this pushbutton to advance quickly within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to advance at six times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to advance at 17 times the normal playing speed. Release this pushbutton to play the passage. ET and the elapsed time of the track appears on the display.

6 RDM (Random): Press this pushbutton to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. RDM ON appears on the display. RDM and the track number appears on the display when each track starts to play. Press RDM again to turn off random play. RDM OFF appears on the display.

◀ SEEK ▶: Press the left arrow to go to the start of the current or the previous track. Press the right arrow to go to the start of the next track. Pressing either arrow for more than two seconds scans the next tracks, playing the first eight seconds of each track until all of the tracks have been previewed. Press the button again to stop scanning and to play the track.

◁ TUNE ▷: Turning the TUNE knob will fast track reverse or advance through tracks. The track number appears on the display for each track.

DISPL (Display): Press this knob to see how long the current track has been playing. ET and the elapsed time of the track appears on the display. To change the default on the display (track or elapsed time), press this knob until you see the desired display, then press and hold the knob for two seconds. The radio produces one beep. The selected display is now the default.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

BAND: Press this button to listen to the radio when a CD is playing. The inactive CD remains safely inside the radio for future listening.

CD AUX (Auxiliary): Press this button to play a CD when listening to the radio. The CD symbol appears on the display when a CD is loaded.

⏏ **(Eject):** Press this button to eject a CD. Eject may be activated with either the ignition or radio off. CDs may be loaded with the ignition and radio off if this button is pressed first.

Playing an MP3 CD-R Disc

Your vehicle's radio system may have the MP3 feature. If it has this feature, it is capable of playing an MP3 CD-R disc. For more information on how to play an MP3 CD-R disc, see *Using an MP3 on page 234* later in this section.

CD Messages

CHECK CD: If this message appears on the display and/or the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

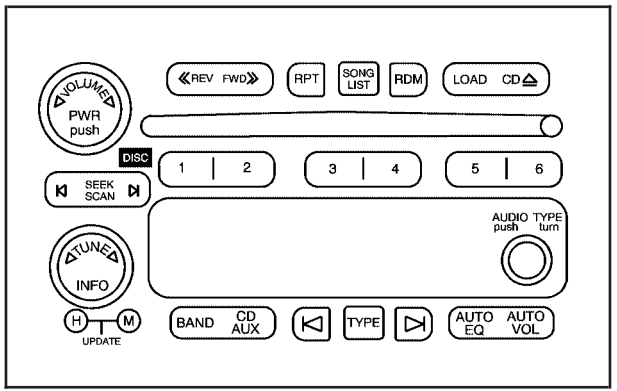
- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- The format of the CD may not be compatible. See *Using an MP3 on page 234* later in this section.
- There may have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label may be caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your dealer when reporting the problem.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Radio with Six-Disc CD



Radio Data System (RDS)

The audio system has a Radio Data System (RDS). RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information.

With RDS, the radio can do the following:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming
- Receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies
- Display messages from radio stations
- Seek to stations with traffic announcements

This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. In rare cases, a radio station may broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

While the radio is tuned to an RDS station, the station name or call letters appear on the display instead of the frequency. RDS stations may also provide the time of day, a program type (PTY) for current programming, and the name of the program being broadcast.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM™ is a satellite radio service that is based in the 48 contiguous United States and Canada. XM™ offers a large variety of coast-to-coast channels including music, news, sports, talk, traffic/weather (U.S. subscribers), and children's programming. XM™ provides digital quality audio and text information that includes song title and artist name. A service fee is required in order to receive the XM™ service. For more information, contact XM™; In the U.S. at www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-852-XMXM (9696) or in Canada at www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-GET-XMSR (438-9677).

Playing the Radio

PWR (Power): Push this knob to turn the system on and off.

◁ **VOLUME** ▷ **:** Turn this knob clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or to decrease the volume.

INFO (Information) (XM™ Satellite Radio Service and RDS Features): When the ignition is off, press this knob to display the time.

Press the INFO button to display additional text information related to the current FM-RDS or XM™ station. A choice of additional information such as: Channel, Song, Artist, and PTY (program type) may appear. Continue pressing the information button to highlight the desired label, and the information about that label displays.

When information is not available, No Info displays.

To change the default on the display, press the INFO knob until you see the desired display, then press and hold the knob until you hear a beep. The selected display becomes the default.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AUTO VOL (Automatic Volume): With automatic volume, the audio system adjusts automatically to make up for road and wind noise as you drive by increasing the volume as vehicle speed increases.

Set the volume at the desired level. Press this button to select MIN (minimum), MED (medium), or MAX. AUTO VOL (maximum automatic volume) appears on the display. Each higher setting provides more volume compensation at faster vehicle speeds. To turn automatic volume off, press this button until AUTO VOL OFF appears on the display.

Finding a Station

BAND: Press this button to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (if equipped). The display shows the selection.

◁ **TUNE** ▷ **:** Turn this knob to select radio stations.

⋈ **SEEK** ⋈ **:** Press either the SEEK or the TYPE arrows to go to the next or to the previous station and stay there.

The radio only seeks stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

⋈ **SCAN** ⋈ **:** Press and hold either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows for two seconds until SCN appears on the display and you hear a beep. The radio goes to a station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next station. Press either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows again to stop scanning.

To scan preset stations, press and hold either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows for more than four seconds. PSC appears on the display and you will hear a double beep. The radio goes to a preset station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next preset station. Press either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows again to stop scanning presets.

The radio only scans stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting Preset Stations

Up to 30 stations (six FM1, six FM2, and six AM, six XM1 and six XM2 (if equipped)), can be programmed on the six numbered pushbuttons, by performing the following steps:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press BAND to select FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (if equipped).
3. Tune in the desired station.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Whenever that numbered pushbutton is pressed, the station that was set returns for that pushbutton.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

To store an equalization setting to a preset station perform the following:

1. Tune to the preset station.
2. Press and release the AUTO EQ button to select the equalization setting.

   Once the equalization no longer appears on the display, the equalization is set for that preset station.
3. To resave the preset, press and hold the preset button until a beep is heard.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting the Tone (Bass/Midrange/Treble)

AUDIO: Push and release the AUDIO knob until BASS, MID, or TREB appears on the display. Turn the knob to increase or to decrease. The display shows the bass, midrange, or treble level. If a station is weak or has static, decrease the treble.

To adjust the bass, midrange, and treble to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob. The radio produces one beep and adjusts the display level to the middle position.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker controls are displayed. ALL CENTERED appears on the display and you will hear a beep.

AUTO EQ (Automatic Equalization): Press this button to select customized equalization settings designed for country/western, jazz, talk, pop, rock, and classical.

To return to the manual mode, press the AUTO EQ button until CUSTOM appears on the display. Then manually adjust the bass, midrange, and treble using the AUDIO knob.

Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade)

AUDIO: To adjust the balance between the right and the left speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until BAL appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the right or the left speakers.

To adjust the fade between the front and rear speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until FAD appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the front or the rear speakers.

The fade feature may not be available on all radio systems.

To adjust the balance or fade to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob while BAL or FAD is displayed. The radio produces one beep and adjusts the display level to the middle position.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob while no tone or speaker controls are displayed. ALL CENTERED appears on the display and you will hear a beep.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Finding a Program Type (PTY) Station (RDS and XM™)

To select and find a desired PTY perform the following:

1. Press the TYPE button to activate program type select mode. P-TYPE and the last selected PTY appears on the display.
2. Turn the TYPE knob or press and release the TYPE button to select a PTY.
3. Once the desired PTY is displayed, press either the TYPE or the SEEK arrows to select and to take you to the PTY's first station.
4. To cancel the seek, press any of the TYPE or SEEK arrows. This also exits the program type seek mode and returns to the last tuned station.

SCAN: Scan the stations within a PTY by performing the following:

1. Press the TYPE button to activate program type select mode. P-TYPE and the last selected PTY appears on the display.
2. Turn the TYPE knob or press and release the TYPE button to select a PTY.
3. Once the desired PTY is displayed, press and hold either the TYPE or the SCAN arrows for two seconds, and the radio begins scanning the stations in the PTY.
4. Press either the TYPE or the SCAN arrows to stop scanning.

BAND (Alternate Frequency): Alternate frequency allows the radio to switch to a stronger station with the same program type. To turn alternate frequency on, press and hold BAND for two seconds. AF ON appears on the display. The radio may switch to stations with a stronger frequency.

To turn alternate frequency off, press and hold BAND again for two seconds. AF OFF appears on the display. The radio does not switch to other stations.

This function does not apply for XM™ Satellite Radio Service.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting Preset PTYs (RDS Only)

These pushbuttons have factory PTY presets. Up to 12 PTYs (six FM1 and six FM2), can be programmed on the six numbered pushbuttons, by performing the following steps:

1. Press BAND to select FM1 or FM2.
2. Press the TYPE button to activate program type select mode. P-TYPE and the last selected PTY appears on the display.
3. Turn the TYPE knob or press and release the TYPE button to select a PTY.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Whenever that numbered pushbutton is pressed, the PTY that was set returns.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

RDS Messages

INFO (Information): If the current station has a message, INFO appears on the display. Press this button to see the message. The message may display the artist, song title, call in phone numbers, etc.

If the entire message is not displayed, parts of the message appears every three seconds. To scroll through the message, press and release the INFO button. A new group of words appears on the display after every press of this button. Once the complete message has displayed, INFO disappears from the display until another new message is received. The last message can be displayed by pressing the INFO button. You can view the last message until a new message is received or a different station is tuned to.

When a message is not available from a station, NO INFO appears on the display.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Radio Messages

CAL ERR (Calibration Error): The audio system has been calibrated for your vehicle from the factory. If CAL ERR appears on the display, it means that the radio has not been configured properly for the vehicle and must be returned to your dealer for service.

LOCKED: This message is displayed when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly, or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer.

Radio Messages for XM™ Only

See *XM Radio Messages on page 240* later in this section for further detail.

Playing a CD

If the ignition or radio is turned off, with a CD in the player, it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

When a CD is inserted, the CD symbol appears on the display. As each new track starts to play, the track number appears on the display.

The CD player can play the smaller 3 inch (8 cm) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the bottom surface of the CD. If the surface of the CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD will not play properly. If the surface of the CD is soiled, see *Care of Your CDs on page 243* for more information.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen.

Notice: **If you add any label to a CD, insert more than one CD into the slot at a time, or attempt to play scratched or damaged CDs, you could damage the CD player. When using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.**

If an error appears on the display, see “CD Messages” later in this section.

LOAD: Press this button to load CDs into the CD player. This CD player holds up to six CDs.

To insert one CD, do the following:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press and release the LOAD button.
3. Wait for the indicator light, located to the right of the slot, to turn green.
4. Load a CD. Insert the CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls the CD in.

To insert multiple CDs, do the following:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the LOAD button for two seconds.

   A beep will sound and the indicator light, located to the right of the slot, begins to flash and MULTI LOAD # appears on the display.
3. Once the light stops flashing and turns green, INSERT CD # appears on the display, load a CD. Insert the CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls the CD in.

   Once the CD is loaded, the indicator light begins flashing again. Once the light stops flashing and turns green, you can load another CD. The CD player takes up to six CDs. Do not try to load more than six.

To load more than one CD but less than six, complete Steps 1 through 3. When finished loading CDs, press the LOAD button to cancel the loading function. The radio begins to play the last CD loaded.

If more than one CD has been loaded, a number for each CD appears on the display.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing a Specific Loaded CD

For every CD loaded, a number appears on the display. To play a specific CD, first press the CD AUX button (if not already in CD mode), then press the numbered pushbutton that corresponds to the CD. A small bar appears under the CD number that is playing and the track number appears on the display.

If an error appears on the display, see “CD Messages” later in this section.

CD ⏏ (Eject): Press this button to eject CD(s).

To eject the CD that is currently playing, press and release this button.

To eject multiple CDs, do the following:

1. Press and hold the CD eject button for five seconds.

   A beep will sound and the indicator light, located to the right of the slot, begins to flash and EJECT ALL appears on the display.
2. Once the light stops flashing, REMOVE CD # appears on the display. The CD ejects and can be removed.

   Once the CD is removed, the indicator light begins flashing again and another CD ejects. To stop ejecting the CDs, press the LOAD or the eject button.

If the CD is not removed, after 25 seconds, the CD automatically pulls back into the player. If CD is pushed back into the player, before the 25 second time period is complete, the player senses an error and tries to eject the CD several times before stopping.

Do not repeatedly press the CD eject button to eject a CD after you have tried to push it in manually. The player’s 25-second eject timer resets at each press of eject, causing the player to not eject the CD until the 25-second time period has elapsed.

≪ REV (Reverse): Press and hold this button to reverse quickly within a track. You will hear sound at a reduced volume. The elapsed time of the track appears on the display. Release the button to play the passage.

FWD ≫ (Forward): Press and hold this button to advance quickly within a track. You will hear sound at a reduced volume. The elapsed time of the track appears on the display. Release the button to play the passage.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

RPT (Repeat): With repeat, one track or an entire CD can be repeated.

To use repeat, do the following:

- To repeat the track you are listening to, press and release the RPT button. RPT appears on the display. Press RPT again to turn off repeat play.
- To repeat the CD you are listening to, press and hold the RPT button for two seconds. RPT appears on the display. Press RPT again to turn off repeat play.

RDM (Random): With random, you can listen to the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order, on one CD or on all of the CDs. To use random, do one of the following:

- To play the tracks on the CD you are listening to in random order, press and release the RDM button. RANDOM ONE appears on the display. Press RDM again to turn off random play.
- To play the tracks on all of the CDs that are loaded in random order, press and hold RDM for more than two seconds. You will hear a beep and RANDOM ALL appears on the display. Press RDM again to turn off random play.

AUTO EQ (Automatic Equalization): Press AUTO EQ to select the equalization setting while playing a CD. The equalization is stored whenever a CD is played. For more information on AUTO EQ, see “AUTO EQ” listed previously in this section.

⋈ **SEEK** ⋊ **:** Press the left arrow to go to the start of the current track (if more than 10 seconds have played), or to go to the previous track (if less than 10 seconds have played). Press the right arrow to go to the next track. If either arrow is held or pressed more than once, the player continues moving backward or forward through the CD.

⋈ **SCAN** ⋊ **:** To scan one CD, press and hold either SCAN arrow for more than two seconds until SCAN appears on the display and you hear a beep. The radio goes to the next track, plays for 10 seconds, then goes to the next track. Press either SCAN arrow again, to stop scanning.

To scan all loaded CDs, press and hold either SCAN arrow for more than four seconds until CD SCAN appears on the display and you hear a beep. Use this feature to listen to 10 seconds of the first track of each loaded CD. Press either SCAN arrow again, to stop scanning.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

INFO (Information): Press this knob to see how long the current track has been playing. To change the default on the display, track or elapsed time, press the knob until you see the desired display, then press and hold the knob until the radio beeps. The selected display becomes the default.

BAND: Press this button to listen to the radio while a CD is playing. The inactive CD(s) remains safely inside the radio for future listening.

Using Song List Mode

The six-disc CD changer has a feature called song list. This feature is capable of saving 20 track selections.

To save tracks into the song list feature, perform the following steps:

1. Turn the CD player on and load it with at least one CD. See “LOAD CD” listed previously in this section for more information.
2. Check to see that the CD changer is not in song list mode. S-LIST should not appear on the display. If S-LIST is present, press the SONG LIST button to turn it off.
3. Select the desired CD by pressing the numbered pushbutton and then use the SEEK or TYPE right arrow to locate the track to be saved. The track begins to play.
4. Press and hold the SONG LIST button to save the track into memory. When SONG LIST is pressed, one beep will sound. After two seconds of continuously pressing the SONG LIST button, two beeps will sound to confirm the track has been saved.
5. Repeat Steps 3 and 4 for saving other selections.

S-LIST FULL appears on the display if you try to save more than 20 selections.

To play the song list, press the SONG LIST button. One beep will sound and S-LIST appears on the display. The recorded tracks begins to play in the order they were saved.

Seek through the song list by using the SEEK or TYPE arrows. Seeking past the last saved track returns to the first saved track.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To delete tracks from the song list, perform the following steps:

1. Turn the CD player on.
2. Press the SONG LIST button to turn song list on. S-LIST appears on the display.
3. Press either SEEK or TYPE arrow to select the desired track to be deleted.
4. Press and hold the SONG LIST button for two seconds. When SONG LIST is pressed, one beep will sound. After two seconds of continuously pressing the SONG LIST button, two beeps will sound to confirm that the track has been deleted.

After a track has been deleted, the remaining tracks are moved up the list. When another track is added to the song list, the track is added to the end of the list.

To delete the entire song list, perform the following steps:

1. Turn the CD player on.
2. Press the SONG LIST button to turn song list on. S-LIST appears on the display.
3. Press and hold the SONG LIST button for more than four seconds. One beep will sound, followed by two beeps after two seconds, and a final beep will sound after four seconds. S-LIST EMPTY appears on the display indicating the song list has been deleted.

If a CD is ejected, and the song list contains saved tracks from that CD, those tracks are automatically deleted from the song list. Any tracks saved to the song list again are added to the bottom of the list.

To end song list mode, press the SONG LIST button. One beep will sound and S-LIST is removed from the display.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CD Messages

CHECK CD: If this message appears on the display and/or the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There may have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label may be caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your dealer when reporting the problem.

Using an MP3

MP3 CD-R Disc

MP3 Format

If you burn your own MP3 disc on a personal computer:

- Make sure the MP3 files are recorded on a CD-R disc.
- Do not mix standard audio and MP3 files on one disc.
- Make sure playlists have a .mp3 or .wpl extension, other file extensions may not work.
- Files can be recorded with a variety of fixed or variable bit rates. Song title, artist name, and album are displayed by the radio when recorded using ID3 tags version 1 and 2.
- Create a folder structure that makes it easy to find songs while driving. Organize songs by albums using one folder for each album. Each folder or album should contain 18 songs or less.
- Make sure to finalize the disc when burning an MP3 disc, using multiple sessions. It is usually better to burn the disc all at once.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

The player is able to read and play a maximum of 50 folders, 50 playlists, 10 sessions, and 255 files. Long file names, folder names, or playlist names may use more disc memory space than necessary. To conserve space on the disc, minimize the length of the file, folder, or playlist names. You can also play an MP3 CD that was recorded using no file folders. The system can support up to 11 folders in depth, though, keep the depth of the folders to a minimum in order to keep down the complexity and confusion in trying to locate a particular folder during playback. If a CD contains more than the maximum of 50 folders, 50 playlists, 10 sessions, and 255 files the player lets you access and navigate up to the maximum, but all items over the maximum are played.

Root Directory

The root directory is treated as a folder. If the root directory has compressed audio files, the directory displays as F1 ROOT. All files contained directly under the root directory are accessed prior to any root directory folders. However, playlists (Px) are always accessed before root folders or files.

Empty Directory or Folder

If a root directory or a folder exists somewhere in the file structure that contains only folders/subfolders and no compressed files directly beneath them, the player advances to the next folder in the file structure that contains compressed audio files. The empty folder does not display.

No Folder

When the CD contains only compressed files, the files are located under the root folder. The next and previous folder functions have no function on a CD that was recorded without folders or playlists. When displaying the name of the folder the radio displays ROOT.

When the CD contains only playlists and compressed audio files, but no folders, all files are located under the root folder. The folder down and the folder up buttons search playlists (Px) first and then go to the root folder. When the radio displays the name of the folder, the radio displays ROOT.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Order of Play

Tracks are played in the following order:

- Play begins from the first track in the first playlist and continues sequentially through all tracks in each playlist. When the last track of the last playlist has played, play continues from the first track of the first playlist.
- If the CD does not contain any playlists, then play begins from the first track under the root directory. When all tracks from the root directory have played, play continues from files according to their numerical listing. After playing the last track from the last folder, play begins again at the first track of the first folder or root directory.

When play enters a new folder, the display does not automatically show the new folder name unless you have chosen the folder mode as the default display. See DISPL (display) later in this section for more information. The new track name appears on the display.

File System and Naming

The song name that displays is the song name that is contained in the ID3 tag. If the song name is not present in the ID3 tag, then the radio displays the file name without the extension (such as .mp3) as the track name.

Track names longer than 32 characters or four pages are shortened. Parts of words on the last page of text and the extension of the filename does not display.

Preprogrammed Playlists

Preprogrammed playlists which were created by WinAmp™, MusicMatch™, or Real Jukebox™ software can be accessed, however, they cannot be edited. These playlists are treated as special folders containing compressed audio song files.

Playing an MP3

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls it in, and READING appears on the display. The CD should begin playing and the CD symbol appears on the display. If you want to insert a CD with the ignition off, first press the eject button or the DISPL knob.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD in the player it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts to play where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

As each new track starts to play, the track number appears on the display.

The CD player can play the smaller 3 inch (8 cm) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the bottom surface of the CD. If the surface of the CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD will not play properly. If the surface of the CD is soiled, see *Care of Your CDs on page 243* Care of Your CDs for more information.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD.

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen.

Notice: **If you add any label to a CD, insert more than one CD into the slot at a time, or attempt to play scratched or damaged CDs, you could damage the CD player. When using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.**

If an error appears on the display, see “CD Messages” later in this section.

1 FLD ▽ (Previous Folder): Press this pushbutton to go to the first track in the previous folder. Pressing this button while in folder random mode takes you to the previous folder and plays the tracks in random order in that folder.

2 FLD △ (Next Folder): Press this pushbutton to go to the first track in the next folder. Pressing this button while in folder random mode takes the CD to the next folder and plays the tracks in random order in that folder.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3 REV (Reverse): Press and hold this pushbutton to reverse quickly within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to reverse at 10 times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to reverse at 20 times the normal playing speed. Release this pushbutton to play the passage. REV and the elapsed time of the track appears on the display.

4 FWD (Forward): Press and hold this pushbutton to advance quickly within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to advance at 10 times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to advance at 20 times the normal playing speed. Release this pushbutton to play the passage. FWD and the elapsed time of the track appears on the display.

6 RDM (Random): To play the tracks in random order in the current folder or playlist, press and release this pushbutton. FLDR RDM (folder random) appears on the display. Once all of the tracks in the current folder or playlist have been played the system moves to the next folder or playlist and plays all of the tracks in random order.

To play all the tracks in random order on the CD, press and hold this pushbutton for two seconds. You will hear a beep and DISC RDM (disc random) appears on the display. This feature does not work with playlists.

When in random, pressing and releasing either SEEK arrow takes the CD to the next or previous random track.

Press and release this pushbutton again to turn off random play. NO RDM (no random) appears on the display.

◀ **SEEK** ▶**:** Press the left arrow to go to the start of the previous track. Press the right arrow to go to the start of the next track. Pressing either arrow for more than two seconds searches the previous or next tracks at two tracks per second. Release the button to stop searching and to play the track.

◁ **TUNE** ▷**:** Turning the TUNE knob will fast track reverse or advance through the tracks in all folders or playlists. The track number and file name appears on the display for each track. Turning this knob while in random will fast track reverse or advance the tracks in sequential order.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DISPL (Display): Press this knob to switch between track mode, folder/playlist mode, and time of day mode. The display shows only eight characters, but there can be up to four pages of text. If there are more than eight characters in the song, folder, or playlist name, pressing this knob within two seconds takes you to the next page of text. If there are no other pages to be shown, pressing this knob within two seconds takes you to the next display mode.

- Track mode displays the current track number and the ID3 tag song name.
- Folder/playlist mode displays the current folder or playlist number and the folder/playlist name.
- Time of day mode displays the time of day and the ID3 tag song name.

To change the default on the display, press the DISPL knob until you see the desired display, then press and hold this knob for two seconds. The radio produces one beep and the selected display is now the default.

INFO (Information): INFO appears on the display whenever a current track has ID3 tag information. Press this button to display the artist name and album contained in the tag. INFO disappears from the display when the information in the ID3 tag has finished being read.

BAND: Press this button to listen to the radio when a CD is playing. The inactive CD remains safely inside the radio for future listening.

CD AUX (Auxiliary): Press this button to play a CD when listening to the radio. The CD symbol illuminates on the display when a CD is loaded.

⏏ **(Eject):** Press this button to eject a CD. Eject can activate while either the ignition or radio is off. CDs can be loaded with the ignition and radio off if this button is pressed first.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

XM Radio Messages

Radio Display Message	Condition	Action Required
XL (Explicit Language Channels)	XL on the radio display, after the channel name, indicates content with explicit language.	These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request, by calling 1-800-852-XMXM (9696).
Updating	Updating encryption code	The encryption code in the receiver is being updated, and no action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds.
No Signl	Loss of signal	The system is functioning correctly, but the vehicle is in a location that is blocking the XM™ signal. When the vehicle is moved into an open area, the signal should return.
Loading	Acquiring channel audio (after 4 second delay)	The radio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly.
Off Air	Channel not in service	This channel is not currently in service. Tune to another channel.
CH Unavl	Channel no longer available	This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station. If this station was one of the presets, choose another station for that preset button.
No Info	Artist Name/Feature not available	No artist information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
No Info	Song/Program Title not available	No song title information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Radio Display Message	Condition	Action Required
No Info	Category Name not available	No category information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
No Info	No Text/Informational message available	No text or informational messages are available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NotFound	No channel available for the chosen category	There are no channels available for the selected category. The system is working properly.
XM Lock	Theft lock active	The XM™ receiver in your vehicle could have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM™ receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If this message is received after having your vehicle serviced, check with your dealer.
Radio ID	Radio ID label (channel 0)	If tuned to channel 0, this message alternates with the XM™ Radio eight digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate the service.
Unknown	Radio ID not known (should only be if hardware failure)	If this message is received when tuned to channel 0, there could be a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer.
Check XM	Hardware failure	If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Theft-Deterrent Feature (Non-RDS Radios)

THEFTLOCK® is designed to discourage theft of your vehicle's radio. The feature works automatically by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). If the radio is moved to a different vehicle, it will not operate and LOC will appear on the display.

With THEFTLOCK® activated, the radio will not operate if stolen.

Theft-Deterrent Feature (RDS Radios)

THEFTLOCK® is designed to discourage theft of your vehicle's radio. The feature works automatically by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). If the radio is moved to a different vehicle, it will not operate and LOCKED will appear on the display.

When the radio and vehicle are turned off, the blinking red light indicates that THEFTLOCK® is armed.

With THEFTLOCK® activated, the radio will not operate if stolen.

Radio Reception

You may experience frequency interference and static during normal radio reception if items such as cellphone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. For better radio reception, most AM radio stations will boost the power levels during the day, and then reduce these levels during the night. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on your radio.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

FM Stereo

FM stereo will give the best sound, but FM signals will reach only about 10 to 40 miles (16 to 65 km). Tall buildings or hills can interfere with FM signals, causing the sound to fade in and out.

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM™ Satellite Radio Service gives digital radio reception from coast-to-coast in the 48 contiguous United States, and in Canada. Just as with FM, tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to fade in and out. In addition, traveling or standing under heavy foliage, bridges, garages, or tunnels may cause loss of the XM™ signal for a period of time. The radio may display No Signl to indicate interference.

Care of Your CDs

Handle CDs carefully. Store them in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. The CD player scans the bottom surface of the disc. If the surface of a CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD will not play properly or not at all. If the surface of a CD is soiled, take a soft, lint free cloth or dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution mixed with water, and clean it. Make sure the wiping process starts from the center to the edge.

Do not touch the bottom side of a CD while handling it; this could damage the surface. Pick up CDs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

Care of the CD Player

Do not use CD lens cleaners for CD players because the lens of the CD optics can become contaminated by lubricants.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fixed Mast Antenna

The fixed mast antenna can withstand most car washes without being damaged. If the mast should ever become slightly bent, straighten it out by hand. If the mast is badly bent, replace it.

Check occasionally to make sure the mast is still tightened to the fender. If tightening is required, tighten by hand, then with a wrench one quarter turn.

XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System

The XM™ Satellite Radio antenna is located on the roof of your vehicle. Keep this antenna clear of snow and ice build up for clear radio reception.

If your vehicle has a sunroof, the performance of the XM™ system may be affected if the sunroof is open.

Loading items onto the roof of your vehicle can interfere with the performance of the XM™ system. Make sure the XM™ Satellite Radio antenna is not obstructed.

Chime Level Adjustment

The radio is used to adjust the vehicle's chime level. To change the volume level of the chime, press and hold pushbutton 6 with the ignition on and the radio power off. The volume level will change from the normal level to loud, and LOUD will appear on the radio display. To change back to the default or normal setting, press and hold pushbutton 6 again. The volume level will change from the loud level to normal, and NORMAL will appear on the radio display. Each time the chime volume is changed, three chimes will sound to indicate the new volume selected. Removing the radio and not replacing it with a factory radio or chime module will disable vehicle chimes.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 4 Driving Your Vehicle

Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle 246
- Defensive Driving 246
- Drunken Driving 247
- Control of a Vehicle 250
- Braking 250
- Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 251
- Braking in Emergencies 253
- Traction Control System (TCS) 253
- Limited-Slip Rear Axle 254
- Steering 255
- Off-Road Recovery 257
- Passing 257
- Loss of Control 259
- Off-Road Driving 260
- Driving at Night 274
- Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads 275
- City Driving 278
- Freeway Driving 279
- Before Leaving on a Long Trip 280
- Highway Hypnosis 281
- Hill and Mountain Roads 282
- Winter Driving 284
- If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow 288
- Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out 288
- Recovery Hooks 289
- Loading Your Vehicle 290
- Truck-Camper Loading Information 296
- Pickup Conversion to Chassis Cab 296

Towing 297
- Towing Your Vehicle 297
- Recreational Vehicle Towing 297
- Towing a Trailer 305
- Trailer Recommendations 318

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle

Defensive Driving

The best advice anyone can give about driving is: Drive defensively.

Please start with a very important safety device in your vehicle: Buckle up. See *Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone on page 20*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Defensive driving really means "Be ready for anything." On city streets, rural roads, or expressways, it means "Always expect the unexpected." Assume that pedestrians or other drivers are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready. Rear-end collisions are about the most preventable of accidents. Yet they are common. Allow enough following distance. Defensive driving requires that a driver concentrate on the driving task. Anything that distracts from the driving task makes proper defensive driving more difficult and can even cause a collision, with resulting injury. Ask a passenger to help do these things, or pull off the road in a safe place to do them. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Drunken Driving

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a national tragedy. It is the number one contributor to the highway death toll, claiming thousands of victims every year.

Alcohol affects four things that anyone needs to drive a vehicle:

- Judgment
- Muscular Coordination
- Vision
- Attentiveness

Police records show that almost half of all motor vehicle-related deaths involve alcohol. In most cases, these deaths are the result of someone who was drinking and driving. In recent years, more than 16,000 annual motor vehicle-related deaths have been associated with the use of alcohol, with more than 300,000 people injured.

Many adults — by some estimates, nearly half the adult population — choose never to drink alcohol, so they never drive after drinking. For persons under 21, it is against the law in every U.S. state to drink alcohol. There are good medical, psychological, and developmental reasons for these laws.

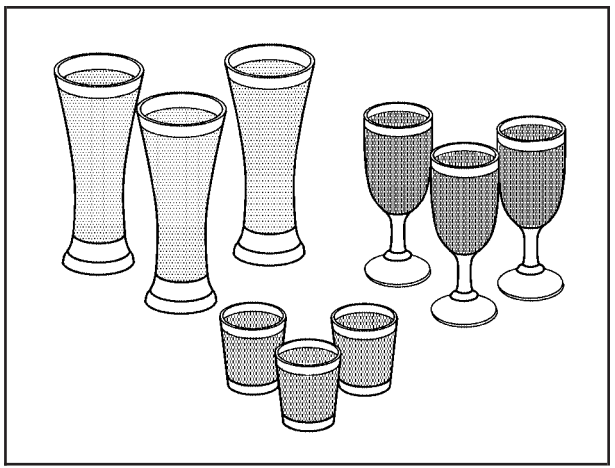
The obvious way to eliminate the leading highway safety problem is for people never to drink alcohol and then drive. But what if people do? How much is “too much” if someone plans to drive? It is a lot less than many might think. Although it depends on each person and situation, here is some general information on the problem.

The Blood Alcohol Concentration (BAC) of someone who is drinking depends upon four things:

- The amount of alcohol consumed
- The drinker’s body weight
- The amount of food that is consumed before and during drinking
- The length of time it has taken the drinker to consume the alcohol

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

According to the American Medical Association, a 180 lb (82 kg) person who drinks three 12 ounce (355 ml) bottles of beer in an hour will end up with a BAC of about 0.06 percent. The person would reach the same BAC by drinking three 4 ounce (120 ml) glasses of wine or three mixed drinks if each had 1-1/2 ounces (45 ml) of liquors like whiskey, gin, or vodka.



It is the amount of alcohol that counts. For example, if the same person drank three double martinis (3 ounces or 90 ml of liquor each) within an hour, the person's BAC would be close to 0.12 percent. A person who consumes food just before or during drinking will have a somewhat lower BAC level.

There is a gender difference, too. Women generally have a lower relative percentage of body water than men. Since alcohol is carried in body water, this means that a woman generally will reach a higher BAC level than a man of her same body weight will when each has the same number of drinks.

The law in most U.S. states, and throughout Canada, sets the legal limit at 0.08 percent. In some other countries, the limit is even lower. For example, it is 0.05 percent in both France and Germany. The BAC limit for all commercial drivers in the United States is 0.04 percent.

The BAC will be over 0.10 percent after three to six drinks (in one hour). Of course, as we have seen, it depends on how much alcohol is in the drinks, and how quickly the person drinks them.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

But the ability to drive is affected well below a BAC of 0.10 percent. Research shows that the driving skills of many people are impaired at a BAC approaching 0.05 percent, and that the effects are worse at night. All drivers are impaired at BAC levels above 0.05 percent. Statistics show that the chance of being in a collision increases sharply for drivers who have a BAC of 0.05 percent or above. A driver with a BAC level of 0.06 percent has doubled his or her chance of having a collision. At a BAC level of 0.10 percent, the chance of this driver having a collision is 12 times greater; at a level of 0.15 percent, the chance is 25 times greater!

The body takes about an hour to rid itself of the alcohol in one drink. No amount of coffee or number of cold showers will speed that up. "I will be careful" is not the right answer. What if there is an emergency, a need to take sudden action, as when a child darts into the street? A person with even a moderate BAC might not be able to react quickly enough to avoid the collision.

There is something else about drinking and driving that many people do not know. Medical research shows that alcohol in a person's system can make crash injuries worse, especially injuries to the brain, spinal cord, or heart. This means that when anyone who has been drinking — driver or passenger — is in a crash, that person's chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

⚠ CAUTION:

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking. Please do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Control of a Vehicle

You have three systems that make your vehicle go where you want it to go. They are the brakes, the steering, and the accelerator. All three systems have to do their work at the places where the tires meet the road.

Sometimes, as when you are driving on snow or ice, it is easy to ask more of those control systems than the tires and road can provide. That means you can lose control of your vehicle.

Adding non-GM accessories can affect your vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 323*.

Braking

See *Brake System Warning Light on page 187*.

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time.

First, you have to decide to push on the brake pedal. That is perception time. Then you have to bring up your foot and do it. That is reaction time.

Average reaction time is about three-fourths of a second. But that is only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination, and eyesight all play a part. So do alcohol, drugs, and frustration. But even in three-fourths of a second, a vehicle moving at 60 mph (100 km/h) travels 66 feet (20 m). That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between your vehicle and others is important.

And, of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road, whether it is pavement or gravel; the condition of the road, whether it is wet, dry, or icy; tire tread; the condition of the brakes; the weight of the vehicle; and the amount of brake force applied.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Avoid needless heavy braking. Some people drive in spurts — heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking — rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. The brakes may not have time to cool between hard stops. The brakes will wear out much faster if you do a lot of heavy braking. If you keep pace with the traffic and allow realistic following distances, you will eliminate a lot of unnecessary braking. That means better braking and longer brake life.

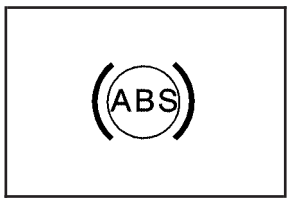
If your vehicle's engine ever stops while you are driving, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. If you do, the pedal may get harder to push down. If the engine stops, you will still have some power brake assist. But you will use it when you brake. Once the power assist is used up, it may take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Adding non-GM accessories can affect your vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 323*.

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

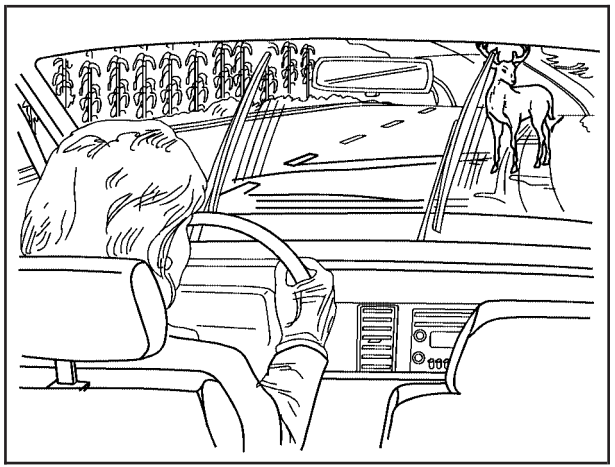
Your vehicle has the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), an advanced electronic braking system that will help prevent a braking skid.

When you start your engine and begin to drive away, ABS will check itself. You may hear a momentary motor or clicking noise while this test is going on. This is normal.



If there is a problem with the ABS, this warning light will stay on. See *Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light on page 188*.

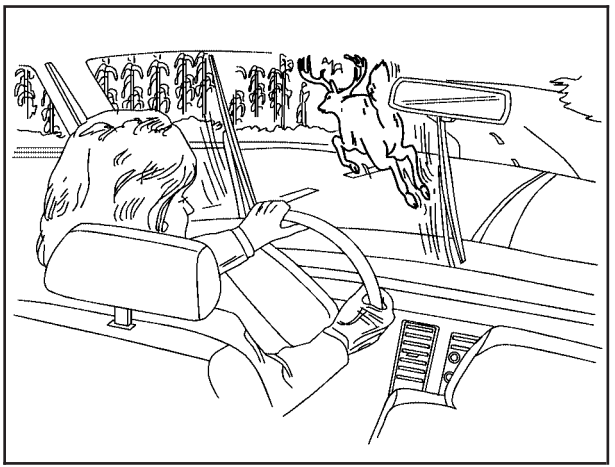
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



Let us say the road is wet and you are driving safely. Suddenly, an animal jumps out in front of you. You slam on the brakes and continue braking. Here is what happens with ABS:

A computer senses that wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each front wheel and at both rear wheels.

ABS can change the brake pressure faster than any driver could. The computer is programmed to make the most of available tire and road conditions. This can help you steer around the obstacle while braking hard.



As you brake, your computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Remember: ABS does not change the time you need to get your foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, you will not have time to apply your brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even though you have ABS.

Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let anti-lock work for you. You may feel the brakes vibrate, or you may notice some noise, but this is normal.

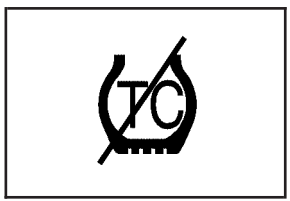
Braking in Emergencies

With ABS, you can steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help you more than even the very best braking.

Traction Control System (TCS)

Your vehicle may have a Traction Control System (TCS) that limits wheel spin. This is especially useful in slippery road conditions. The system operates only if it senses that one or both of the rear wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, the system reduces engine power and may also upshift the transmission to limit wheel spin.

You may feel or hear the system working, but this is normal.



The TCS button is located on your instrument panel. Press this button to turn the TCS off and on.

When the traction control system is turned off, an indicator light on the button will illuminate.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If your vehicle is in cruise control when the traction control system begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control will automatically disengage. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, you may re-engage the cruise control. See *Cruise Control on page 164*.

TCS operates in all transmission shift lever positions. But the system can upshift the transmission only as high as the shift lever position you have chosen, so you should use the lower gears only when necessary. See *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 120* and/or *Manual Transmission Operation on page 124* for more information.

If there is a problem with TCS, TRACTION FAULT will be displayed on your Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 200* for more information.

When this warning is displayed, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly.

To limit wheel spin, especially in slippery road conditions, you should always leave TCS on. But you can turn the system off if you ever need to. You should turn the system off if your vehicle ever gets stuck in sand, mud or snow and rocking the vehicle is required. See *Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out on page 288* and *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 288* for more information.

Adding non-GM accessories can affect your vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 323* for more information.

Limited-Slip Rear Axle

If your vehicle has this feature, your limited-slip rear axle can give you additional traction on snow, mud, ice, sand or gravel. It works like a standard axle most of the time, but when one of the rear wheels has no traction and the other does, this feature will allow the wheel with traction to move the vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Steering

Power Steering

If you lose power steering assist because the engine stops or the system is not functioning, you can steer but it will take much more effort.

Steering Tips

It is important to take curves at a reasonable speed.

A lot of the “driver lost control” accidents mentioned on the news happen on curves. Here is why:

Experienced driver or beginner, each of us is subject to the same laws of physics when driving on curves. The traction of the tires against the road surface makes it possible for the vehicle to change its path when you turn the front wheels. If there is no traction, inertia will keep the vehicle going in the same direction. If you have ever tried to steer a vehicle on wet ice, you will understand this.

The traction you can get in a curve depends on the condition of your tires and the road surface, the angle at which the curve is banked, and your speed. While you are in a curve, speed is the one factor you can control.

Suppose you are steering through a sharp curve. Then you suddenly accelerate. Both control systems — steering and acceleration — have to do their work where the tires meet the road. Adding the sudden acceleration can demand too much of those places. You can lose control.

What should you do if this ever happens? Ease up on the accelerator pedal, steer the vehicle the way you want it to go, and slow down.

Speed limit signs near curves warn that you should adjust your speed. Of course, the posted speeds are based on good weather and road conditions. Under less favorable conditions you will want to go slower.

If you need to reduce your speed as you approach a curve, do it before you enter the curve, while your front wheels are straight ahead.

Try to adjust your speed so you can “drive” through the curve. Maintain a reasonable, steady speed. Wait to accelerate until you are out of the curve, and then accelerate gently into the straightaway.

Adding non-GM accessories can affect your vehicle’s performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 323*.

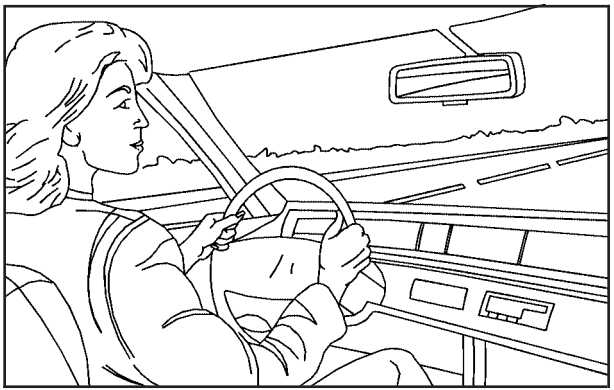
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Steering in Emergencies

There are times when steering can be more effective than braking. For example, you come over a hill and find a truck stopped in your lane, or a car suddenly pulls out from nowhere, or a child darts out from between parked cars and stops right in front of you. You can avoid these problems by braking — if you can stop in time. But sometimes you cannot; there is not room. That is the time for evasive action — steering around the problem.

Your vehicle can perform very well in emergencies like these. First apply your brakes.

See *Braking on page 250*. It is better to remove as much speed as you can from a possible collision. Then steer around the problem, to the left or right depending on the space available.



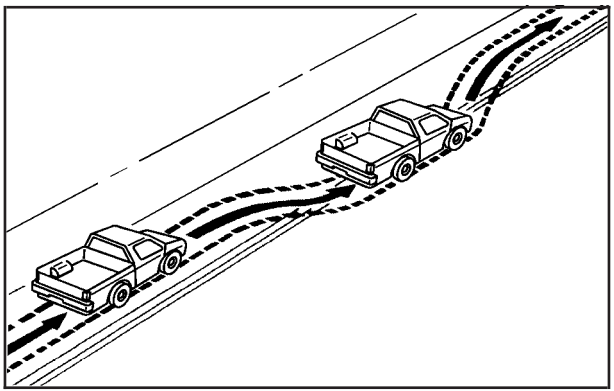
An emergency like this requires close attention and a quick decision. If you are holding the steering wheel at the recommended 9 and 3 o'clock positions, you can turn it a full 180 degrees very quickly without removing either hand. But you have to act fast, steer quickly, and just as quickly straighten the wheel once you have avoided the object.

The fact that such emergency situations are always possible is a good reason to practice defensive driving at all times and wear safety belts properly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Off-Road Recovery

You may find that your right wheels have dropped off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while you are driving.



If the level of the shoulder is only slightly below the pavement, recovery should be fairly easy. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer so that your vehicle straddles the edge of the pavement. You can turn the steering wheel up to one-quarter turn until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge. Then turn your steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Passing

The driver of a vehicle about to pass another on a two-lane highway waits for just the right moment, accelerates, moves around the vehicle ahead, then goes back into the right lane again. A simple maneuver?

Not necessarily! Passing another vehicle on a two-lane highway is a potentially dangerous move, since the passing vehicle occupies the same lane as oncoming traffic for several seconds. A miscalculation, an error in judgment, or a brief surrender to frustration or anger can suddenly put the passing driver face to face with the worst of all traffic accidents — the head-on collision.

So here are some tips for passing:

- Drive ahead. Look down the road, to the sides, and to crossroads for situations that might affect your passing patterns. If you have any doubt whatsoever about making a successful pass, wait for a better time.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Watch for traffic signs, pavement markings, and lines. If you can see a sign up ahead that might indicate a turn or an intersection, delay your pass. A broken center line usually indicates it is all right to pass, providing the road ahead is clear. Never cross a solid line on your side of the lane or a double solid line, even if the road seems empty of approaching traffic.
- Do not get too close to the vehicle you want to pass while you are awaiting an opportunity. For one thing, following too closely reduces your area of vision, especially if you are following a larger vehicle. Also, you will not have adequate space if the vehicle ahead suddenly slows or stops. Keep back a reasonable distance.
- When it looks like a chance to pass is coming up, start to accelerate but stay in the right lane and do not get too close. Time your move so you will be increasing speed as the time comes to move into the other lane. If the way is clear to pass, you will have a running start that more than makes up for the distance you would lose by dropping back. And if something happens to cause you to cancel your pass, you need only slow down and drop back again and wait for another opportunity.
- If other vehicles are lined up to pass a slow vehicle, wait your turn. But take care that someone is not trying to pass you as you pull out to pass the slow vehicle. Remember to glance over your shoulder and check the blind spot.
- Check your vehicle's mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and start your left lane change signal before moving out of the right lane to pass. When you are far enough ahead of the passed vehicle to see its front in your vehicle's inside mirror, activate the right lane change signal and move back into the right lane. Remember that your vehicle's passenger side outside mirror is convex. The vehicle you just passed may seem to be farther away from you than it really is.
- Try not to pass more than one vehicle at a time on two-lane roads. Reconsider before passing the next vehicle.
- Do not overtake a slowly moving vehicle too rapidly. Even though the brake lamps are not flashing, it may be slowing down or starting to turn.
- If you are being passed, make it easy for the following driver to get ahead of you. Perhaps you can ease a little to the right.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Loss of Control

Let us review what driving experts say about what happens when the three control systems — brakes, steering, and acceleration — do not have enough friction where the tires meet the road to do what the driver has asked.

In any emergency, do not give up. Keep trying to steer and constantly seek an escape route or area of less danger.

Skidding

In a skid, a driver can lose control of the vehicle. Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

The three types of skids correspond to your vehicle's three control systems. In the braking skid, your wheels are not rolling. In the steering or cornering skid, too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force. And in the acceleration skid, too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

A cornering skid is best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If your vehicle starts to slide, ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. If you start steering quickly enough, your vehicle may straighten out. Always be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

Of course, traction is reduced when water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material is on the road. For safety, you will want to slow down and adjust your driving to these conditions. It is important to slow down on slippery surfaces because stopping distance will be longer and vehicle control more limited.

While driving on a surface with reduced traction, try your best to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide. You may not realize the surface is slippery until your vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.

Remember: Any Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) helps avoid only the braking skid.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Off-Road Driving

This off-road guide is for vehicles that have four-wheel drive. Also, see *Braking on page 250* and *Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) on page 251*. If your vehicle does not have four-wheel drive, you should not drive off-road unless you are on a level, solid surface.

Off-road driving can be great fun. But it does have some definite hazards. The greatest of these is the terrain itself.

“Off-roading” means you have left the great North American road system behind. Traffic lanes are not marked. Curves are not banked. There are no road signs. Surfaces can be slippery, rough, uphill, or downhill. In short, you have gone right back to nature.

Off-road driving involves some new skills. And that is why it is very important that you read this guide. You will find many driving tips and suggestions. These will help make your off-road driving safer and more enjoyable.

Before You Go Off-Roading

There are some things to do before you go out. For example, be sure to have all necessary maintenance and service work done. Check to make sure all underbody shields, if the vehicle has them, are properly attached. Be sure you read all the information about your four-wheel-drive vehicle in this manual. Is there enough fuel? Is the spare tire fully inflated? Are the fluid levels up where they should be? What are the local laws that apply to off-roading where you will be driving? If you do not know, you should check with law enforcement people in the area. Will you be on someone’s private land? If so, be sure to get the necessary permission.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving

⚠ CAUTION:

- **Cargo on the load floor piled higher than the seatbacks can be thrown forward during a sudden stop. You or your passengers could be injured. Keep cargo below the top of the seatbacks.**
- **Unsecured cargo on the load floor can be tossed about when driving over rough terrain. You or your passengers can be struck by flying objects. Secure the cargo properly.**
- **Heavy loads on the roof raise the vehicle's center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over. You can be seriously or fatally injured if the vehicle rolls over. Put heavy loads inside the cargo area, not on the roof. Keep cargo in the cargo area as far forward and low as possible.**

There are some important things to remember about how to load your vehicle.

- The heaviest things should be on the load floor and forward of the rear axle. Put heavier items as far forward as you can.
- Be sure the load is secured properly, so driving on the off-road terrain does not toss things around.

You will find other important information in this manual. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290* and *Tires on page 377*.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Environmental Concerns

Off-road driving can provide wholesome and satisfying recreation. However, it also raises environmental concerns. We recognize these concerns and urge every off-roader to follow these basic rules for protecting the environment:

- Always use established trails, roads, and areas that have been specially set aside for public off-road recreational driving; obey all posted regulations.
- Avoid any driving practice that could damage the environment — shrubs, flowers, trees, grasses — or disturb wildlife. This includes wheel-spinning, breaking down trees, or unnecessary driving through streams or over soft ground.
- Always carry a litter bag — make sure all refuse is removed from any campsite before leaving.
- Take extreme care with open fires where permitted, camp stoves, and lanterns.
- Never park your vehicle over dry grass or other combustible materials that could catch fire from the heat of the vehicle's exhaust system.

Traveling to Remote Areas

It makes sense to plan your trip, especially when going to a remote area. Know the terrain and plan your route. You are much less likely to get bad surprises. Get accurate maps of trails and terrain. Try to learn of any blocked or closed roads.

It is also a good idea to travel with at least one other vehicle. If something happens to one of them, the other can help quickly.

Does your vehicle have a winch? If so, be sure to read the winch instructions. In a remote area, a winch can be handy if you get stuck. But you will want to know how to use it properly.

Getting Familiar with Off-Road Driving

It is a good idea to practice in an area that is safe and close to home before you go into the wilderness. Off-road driving does require some new and different skills. Here is what we mean.

Tune your senses to different kinds of signals. Your eyes, for example, need to constantly sweep the terrain for unexpected obstacles. Your ears need to listen for unusual tire or engine sounds. With your arms, hands, feet, and body, you will need to respond to vibrations and vehicle bounce.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Controlling your vehicle is the key to successful off-road driving. One of the best ways to control your vehicle is to control your speed. Here are some things to keep in mind. At higher speeds:

- You approach things faster and you have less time to scan the terrain for obstacles.
- You have less time to react.
- You have more vehicle bounce when you drive over obstacles.
- You will need more distance for braking, especially since you are on an unpaved surface.

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are driving off-road, bouncing and quick changes in direction can easily throw you out of position. This could cause you to lose control and crash. So, whether you are driving on or off the road, you and your passengers should wear safety belts.

Scanning the Terrain

Off-road driving can take you over many different kinds of terrain. You need to be familiar with the terrain and its many different features. Here are some things to consider.

Surface Conditions: Off-roading can take you over hard-packed dirt, gravel, rocks, grass, sand, mud, snow, or ice. Each of these surfaces affects the steering, acceleration, and braking of your vehicle in different ways. Depending upon the kind of surface you are on, you may experience slipping, sliding, wheel spinning, delayed acceleration, poor traction, and longer braking distances.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Surface Obstacles: Unseen or hidden obstacles can be hazardous. A rock, log, hole, rut, or bump can startle you if you are not prepared for them. Often these obstacles are hidden by grass, bushes, snow, or even the rise and fall of the terrain itself. Here are some things to consider:

- Is the path ahead clear?
- Will the surface texture change abruptly up ahead?
- Does the travel take you uphill or downhill? There is more discussion of these subjects later.
- Will you have to stop suddenly or change direction quickly?

When you drive over obstacles or rough terrain, keep a firm grip on the steering wheel. Ruts, troughs, or other surface features can jerk the wheel out of your hands if you are not prepared.

When you drive over bumps, rocks, or other obstacles, your wheels can leave the ground. If this happens, even with one or two wheels, you cannot control the vehicle as well or at all.

Because you will be on an unpaved surface, it is especially important to avoid sudden acceleration, sudden turns, or sudden braking.

In a way, off-road driving requires a different kind of alertness from driving on paved roads and highways. There are no road signs, posted speed limits, or signal lights. You have to use your own good judgment about what is safe and what is not.

Drinking and driving can be very dangerous on any road. And this is certainly true for off-road driving. At the very time you need special alertness and driving skills, your reflexes, perceptions, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You could have a serious — or even fatal — accident if you drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking.
See *Drunken Driving on page 247*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving on Off-Road Hills

Off-road driving often takes you up, down, or across a hill. Driving safely on hills requires good judgment and an understanding of what your vehicle can and cannot do. There are some hills that simply cannot be driven, no matter how well built the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Many hills are simply too steep for any vehicle. If you drive up them, you will stall. If you drive down them, you cannot control your speed. If you drive across them, you will roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness, do not drive the hill.

Approaching a Hill

When you approach a hill, you need to decide if it is one of those hills that is just too steep to climb, descend, or cross. Steepness can be hard to judge. On a very small hill, for example, there may be a smooth, constant incline with only a small change in elevation where you can easily see all the way to the top. On a large hill, the incline may get steeper as you near the top, but you may not see this because the crest of the hill is hidden by bushes, grass, or shrubs.

Here are some other things to consider as you approach a hill.

- Is there a constant incline, or does the hill get sharply steeper in places?
- Is there good traction on the hillside, or will the surface cause tire slipping?
- Is there a straight path up or down the hill so you will not have to make turning maneuvers?
- Are there obstructions on the hill that can block your path, such as boulders, trees, logs, or ruts?
- What is beyond the hill? Is there a cliff, an embankment, a drop-off, a fence? Get out and walk the hill if you do not know. It is the smart way to find out.
- Is the hill simply too rough? Steep hills often have ruts, gullies, troughs, and exposed rocks because they are more susceptible to the effects of erosion.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving Uphill

Once you decide you can safely drive up the hill, you need to take some special steps.

- Use a low gear and get a firm grip on the steering wheel.
- Get a smooth start up the hill and try to maintain your speed. Do not use more power than you need, because you do not want your wheels to start spinning or sliding.
- Try to drive straight up the hill if at all possible. If the path twists and turns, you might want to find another route.

⚠ CAUTION:

Turning or driving across steep hills can be dangerous. You could lose traction, slide sideways, and possibly roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. When driving up hills, always try to go straight up.

- Ease up on your speed as you approach the top of the hill.
- Attach a flag to the vehicle to make you more visible to approaching traffic on trails or hills.
- Sound the horn as you approach the top of the hill to let opposing traffic know you are there.
- Use your headlamps even during the day. They make you more visible to oncoming traffic.

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving to the top (crest) of a hill at full speed can cause an accident. There could be a drop-off, embankment, cliff, or even another vehicle. You could be seriously injured or killed. As you near the top of a hill, slow down and stay alert.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: What should I do if my vehicle stalls, or is about to stall, and I cannot make it up the hill?

A: If this happens, there are some things you should do, and there are some things you must not do. First, here is what you *should* do:

- Push the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and keep it from rolling backwards. Also, apply the parking brake.
- If your engine is still running, shift the transmission to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill in REVERSE (R).
- If your engine has stopped running, you will need to restart it. With the brake pedal pressed and the parking brake still applied, shift the transmission to PARK (P), or shift to NEUTRAL if your vehicle has a manual transmission, and restart the engine. Then, shift to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill as straight as possible in REVERSE (R).
- As you are backing down the hill, put your left hand on the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position. This way, you will be able to tell if the wheels are straight and maneuver as you back down. It is best that you back down the hill with the wheels straight rather than in the left or right direction. Turning the wheel too far to the left or right will increase the possibility of a rollover.

Here are some things you *must not* do if you stall, or are about to stall, when going up a hill.

- Never attempt to prevent a stall by shifting into NEUTRAL (N), or pressing the clutch if your vehicle has a manual transmission, to rev-up the engine and regain forward momentum. This will not work. Your vehicle will roll backwards very quickly and you could go out of control.

  Instead, apply the regular brake to stop the vehicle. Then apply the parking brake. Shift to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back straight down.
- Never attempt to turn around if you are about to stall when going up a hill. If the hill is steep enough to stall your vehicle, it is steep enough to cause you to roll over if you turn around. If you cannot make it up the hill, you must back straight down the hill.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: Suppose, after stalling, I try to back down the hill and decide I just cannot do it. What should I do?

A: Set the parking brake, put the automatic transmission in PARK (P), or the manual transmission in FIRST (1), and turn off the engine. Leave the vehicle and go get some help. Exit on the uphill side and stay clear of the path the vehicle would take if it rolled downhill.

Driving Downhill

When off-roading takes you downhill, you will want to consider a number of things:

- How steep is the downhill? Will I be able to maintain vehicle control?
- What is the surface like? Smooth? Rough? Slippery? Hard-packed dirt? Gravel?
- Are there hidden surface obstacles? Ruts? Logs? Boulders?
- What is at the bottom of the hill? Is there a hidden creek bank or even a river bottom with large rocks?

If you decide you can go down a hill safely, then try to keep your vehicle headed straight down, and use a low gear. This way, engine drag can help the brakes and they will not have to do all the work. Descend slowly, keeping your vehicle under control at all times.

⚠ CAUTION:

Heavy braking when going down a hill can cause your brakes to overheat and fade. This could cause loss of control and a serious accident. Apply the brakes lightly when descending a hill and use a low gear to keep vehicle speed under control.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: Are there some things I should not do when driving down a hill?

A: Yes! These are important because if you ignore them you could lose control and have a serious accident.

- When driving downhill, avoid turns that take you across the incline of the hill. A hill that is not too steep to drive down may be too steep to drive across. You could roll over if you do not drive straight down.
- Never go downhill with the transmission in NEUTRAL (N), or with the clutch pedal pressed down with a manual transmission. This is called “free-wheeling.” The brakes will have to do all the work and could overheat and fade.

Q: Am I likely to stall when going downhill?

A: It is much more likely to happen going uphill. But if it happens going downhill, here is what to do.

1. Stop your vehicle by applying the regular brakes. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift to PARK (P), or to NEUTRAL with the manual transmission, and, while still braking, restart the engine.
3. Shift back to a low gear, release the parking brake, and drive straight down.
4. If the engine will not start, get out and get help.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving Across an Incline

Sooner or later, an off-road trail will probably go across the incline of a hill. If this happens, you have to decide whether to try to drive across the incline. Here are some things to consider:

- A hill that can be driven straight up or down may be too steep to drive across. When you go straight up or down a hill, the length of the wheel base — the distance from the front wheels to the rear wheels — reduces the likelihood the vehicle will tumble end over end. But when you drive across an incline, the much more narrow track width — the distance between the left and right wheels — may not prevent the vehicle from tilting and rolling over. Also, driving across an incline puts more weight on the downhill wheels. This could cause a downhill slide or a rollover.
- Surface conditions can be a problem when you drive across a hill. Loose gravel, muddy spots, or even wet grass can cause your tires to slip sideways, downhill. If the vehicle slips sideways, it can hit something that will trip it — a rock, a rut, etc. — and roll over.
- Hidden obstacles can make the steepness of the incline even worse. If you drive across a rock with the uphill wheels, or if the downhill wheels drop into a rut or depression, your vehicle can tilt even more.

For reasons like these, you need to decide carefully whether to try to drive across an incline. Just because the trail goes across the incline does not mean you have to drive it. The last vehicle to try it might have rolled over.

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving across an incline that is too steep will make your vehicle roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness of the incline, do not drive across it. Find another route instead.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

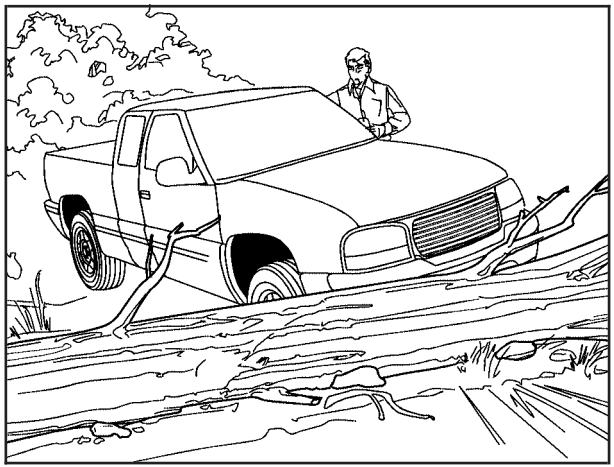
Q: What if I am driving across an incline that is not too steep, but I hit some loose gravel and start to slide downhill. What should I do?

A: If you feel your vehicle starting to slide sideways, turn downhill. This should help straighten out the vehicle and prevent the side slipping. However, a much better way to prevent this is to get out and “walk the course” so you know what the surface is like before you drive it.

Stalling on an Incline

If your vehicle stalls when you are crossing an incline, be sure you, and any passengers, get out on the uphill side, even if the door there is harder to open. If you get out on the downhill side and the vehicle starts to roll over, you will be right in its path.

If you have to walk down the slope, stay out of the path the vehicle will take if it does roll over.



⚠ CAUTION:

Getting out on the downhill (low) side of a vehicle stopped across an incline is dangerous. If the vehicle rolls over, you could be crushed or killed. Always get out on the uphill (high) side of the vehicle and stay well clear of the rollover path.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow, or Ice

When you drive in mud, snow, or sand, your wheels will not get good traction. You cannot accelerate as quickly, turning is more difficult, and you will need longer braking distances.

It is best to use a low gear when you are in mud — the deeper the mud, the lower the gear. In really deep mud, the idea is to keep your vehicle moving so you do not get stuck.

When you drive on sand, you will sense a change in wheel traction. But it will depend upon how loosely packed the sand is. On loosely packed sand, such as on beaches or sand dunes, your tires will tend to sink into the sand. This has an effect on steering, accelerating, and braking. Drive at a reduced speed and avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.

Hard packed snow and ice offer the worst tire traction. On these surfaces, it is very easy to lose control. On wet ice, for example, the traction is so poor that you will have difficulty accelerating. And if you do get moving, poor steering and difficult braking can cause you to slide out of control.

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving on frozen lakes, ponds, or rivers can be dangerous. Underwater springs, currents under the ice, or sudden thaws can weaken the ice. Your vehicle could fall through the ice and you and your passengers could drown. Drive your vehicle on safe surfaces only.

Driving in Water

Heavy rain can mean flash flooding, and flood waters demand extreme caution.

Find out how deep the water is before you drive through it. If it is deep enough to cover the wheel hubs, axles, or exhaust pipe, do not try it — you probably will not get through. Also, water that deep can damage the axle and other vehicle parts.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If the water is not too deep, drive slowly through it. At faster speeds, water splashes on the ignition system and your vehicle can stall. Stalling can also occur if you get the tailpipe under water. And, as long as the tailpipe is under water, you will never be able to start the engine. When you go through water, remember that when the brakes get wet, it may take you longer to stop.

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving through rushing water can be dangerous. Deep water can sweep your vehicle downstream and you and your passengers could drown. If it is only shallow water, it can still wash away the ground from under your tires, and you could lose traction and roll the vehicle over. Do not drive through rushing water.

See *Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads on page 275* for more information on driving through water.

After Off-Road Driving

Remove any brush or debris that has collected on the underbody, chassis, or under the hood. These accumulations can be a fire hazard.

After operation in mud or sand, have the brake linings cleaned and checked. These substances can cause glazing and uneven braking. Check the body structure, steering, suspension, wheels, tires, and exhaust system for damage. Also, check the fuel lines and cooling system for any leakage.

Your vehicle will require more frequent service due to off-road use. Refer to the maintenance schedule for additional information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving at Night

Night driving is more dangerous than day driving. One reason is that some drivers are likely to be impaired — by alcohol or drugs, with night vision problems, or by fatigue.

Here are some tips on night driving.

- Drive defensively.
- Do not drink and drive.
- Adjust the inside rearview mirror to reduce the glare from headlamps behind you.
- Since you cannot see as well, you may need to slow down and keep more space between you and other vehicles.
- Slow down, especially on higher speed roads. Your vehicle's headlamps can light up only so much road ahead.
- In remote areas, watch for animals.
- If you are tired, pull off the road in a safe place and rest.

No one can see as well at night as in the daytime. But as we get older these differences increase. A 50-year-old driver may require at least twice as much light to see the same thing at night as a 20-year-old.

What you do in the daytime can also affect your night vision. For example, if you spend the day in bright sunshine you are wise to wear sunglasses. Your eyes will have less trouble adjusting to night. But if you are driving, do not wear sunglasses at night. They may cut down on glare from headlamps, but they also make a lot of things invisible.

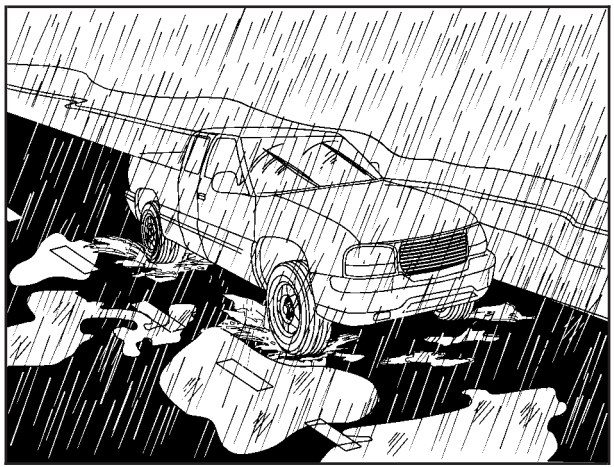
You can be temporarily blinded by approaching headlamps. It can take a second or two, or even several seconds, for your eyes to re-adjust to the dark. When you are faced with severe glare, as from a driver who does not lower the high beams, or a vehicle with misaimed headlamps, slow down a little. Avoid staring directly into the approaching headlamps.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Keep the windshield and all the glass on your vehicle clean — inside and out. Glare at night is made much worse by dirt on the glass. Even the inside of the glass can build up a film caused by dust. Dirty glass makes lights dazzle and flash more than clean glass would, making the pupils of your eyes contract repeatedly.

Remember that the headlamps light up far less of a roadway when you are in a turn or curve. Keep your eyes moving; that way, it is easier to pick out dimly lighted objects. Just as the headlamps should be checked regularly for proper aim, so should your eyes be examined regularly. Some drivers suffer from night blindness — the inability to see in dim light — and are not even aware of it.

Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads



Rain and wet roads can mean driving trouble. On a wet road, you cannot stop, accelerate, or turn as well because your tire-to-road traction is not as good as on dry roads. And, if your tires do not have much tread left, you will get even less traction. It is always wise to go slower and be cautious if rain starts to fall while you are driving. The surface may get wet suddenly when your reflexes are tuned for driving on dry pavement.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The heavier the rain, the harder it is to see. Even if your windshield wiper blades are in good shape, a heavy rain can make it harder to see road signs and traffic signals, pavement markings, the edge of the road, and even people walking.

It is wise to keep your wiping equipment in good shape and keep your windshield washer fluid reservoir filled with washer fluid. Replace your windshield wiper inserts when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield, or when strips of rubber start to separate from the inserts.

⚠ CAUTION:

Wet brakes can cause accidents. They may not work as well in a quick stop and may cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car wash, apply your brake pedal lightly until your brakes work normally.

Driving too fast through large water puddles or even going through some car washes can cause problems, too. The water may affect your brakes. Try to avoid puddles. But if you cannot, try to slow down before you hit them.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. So much water can build up under your tires that they can actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When your vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

Hydroplaning does not happen often. But it can if your tires do not have much tread or if the pressure in one or more is low. It can happen if a lot of water is standing on the road. If you can see reflections from trees, telephone poles, or other vehicles, and raindrops dimple the water's surface, there could be hydroplaning.

Hydroplaning usually happens at higher speeds. There just is not a hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when it is raining.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving Through Deep Standing Water

Notice: **If you drive too quickly through deep puddles or standing water, water can come in through your engine's air intake and badly damage your engine. Never drive through water that is slightly lower than the underbody of your vehicle. If you cannot avoid deep puddles or standing water, drive through them very slowly.**

Driving Through Flowing Water

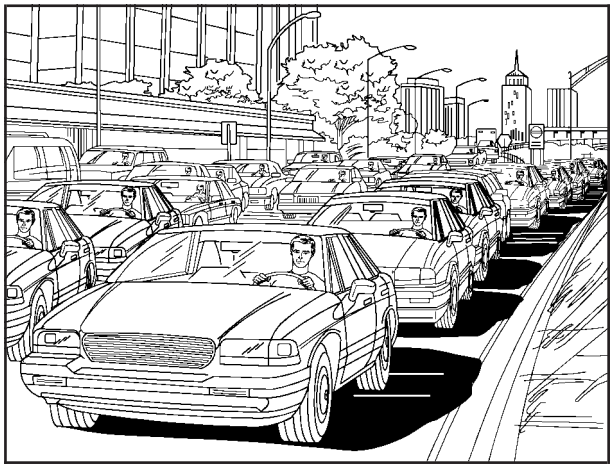
> **⚠ CAUTION:**
>
> **Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. If you try to drive through flowing water, as you might at a low water crossing, your vehicle can be carried away. As little as six inches of flowing water can carry away a smaller vehicle. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warning signs, and otherwise be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.**

Some Other Rainy Weather Tips

- Turn on your low-beam headlamps — not just your parking lamps — to help make you more visible to others.
- Besides slowing down, allow some extra following distance. And be especially careful when you pass another vehicle. Allow yourself more clear room ahead, and be prepared to have your view restricted by road spray.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires on page 377*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

City Driving



One of the biggest problems with city streets is the amount of traffic on them. You will want to watch out for what the other drivers are doing and pay attention to traffic signals.

Here are ways to increase your safety in city driving:

- Know the best way to get to where you are going. Get a city map and plan your trip into an unknown part of the city just as you would for a cross-country trip.
- Try to use the freeways that rim and crisscross most large cities. You will save time and energy. See *Freeway Driving on page 279*.
- Treat a green light as a warning signal. A traffic light is there because the corner is busy enough to need it. When a light turns green, and just before you start to move, check both ways for vehicles that have not cleared the intersection or may be running the red light.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Freeway Driving

Mile for mile, freeways — also called thruways, parkways, expressways, turnpikes, or superhighways — are the safest of all roads. But they have their own special rules.

The most important advice on freeway driving is: Keep up with traffic and keep to the right. Drive at the same speed most of the other drivers are driving. Too-fast or too-slow driving breaks a smooth traffic flow. Treat the left lane on a freeway as a passing lane.

At the entrance, there is usually a ramp that leads to the freeway. If you have a clear view of the freeway as you drive along the entrance ramp, you should begin to check traffic. Try to determine where you expect to blend with the flow. Try to merge into the gap at close to the prevailing speed. Switch on your turn signal, check your mirrors, and glance over your shoulder as often as necessary. Try to blend smoothly with the traffic flow.

Once you are on the freeway, adjust your speed to the posted limit or to the prevailing rate if it is slower. Stay in the right lane unless you want to pass.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Before changing lanes, check your mirrors. Then use your turn signal.

Just before you leave the lane, glance quickly over your shoulder to make sure there is not another vehicle in your blind spot.

Once you are moving on the freeway, make certain you allow a reasonable following distance. Expect to move slightly slower at night.

When you want to leave the freeway, move to the proper lane well in advance. If you miss your exit, do not, under any circumstances, stop and back up. Drive on to the next exit.

The exit ramp can be curved, sometimes quite sharply. The exit speed is usually posted.

Reduce your speed according to your speedometer, not to your sense of motion. After driving for any distance at higher speeds, you may tend to think you are going slower than you actually are.

Before Leaving on a Long Trip

Make sure you are ready. Try to be well rested. If you must start when you are not fresh — such as after a day's work — do not plan to make too many miles that first part of the journey. Wear comfortable clothing and shoes you can easily drive in.

Is your vehicle ready for a long trip? If you keep it serviced and maintained, it is ready to go. If it needs service, have it done before starting out. Of course, you will find experienced and able service experts in GM dealerships all across North America. They will be ready and willing to help if you need it.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Here are some things you can check before a trip:

- *Windshield Washer Fluid:* Is the reservoir full? Are all windows clean inside and outside?
- *Wiper Blades:* Are they in good shape?
- *Fuel, Engine Oil, Other Fluids:* Have you checked all levels?
- *Lamps:* Are they all working? Are the lenses clean?
- *Tires:* They are vitally important to a safe, trouble-free trip. Is the tread good enough for long-distance driving? Are the tires all inflated to the recommended pressure?
- *Weather Forecasts:* What is the weather outlook along your route? Should you delay your trip a short time to avoid a major storm system?
- *Maps:* Do you have up-to-date maps?

Highway Hypnosis

Is there actually such a condition as highway hypnosis? Or is it just plain falling asleep at the wheel? Call it highway hypnosis, lack of awareness, or whatever.

There is something about an easy stretch of road with the same scenery, along with the hum of the tires on the road, the drone of the engine, and the rush of the wind against the vehicle that can make you sleepy. Do not let it happen to you! If it does, your vehicle can leave the road in less than a second, and you could crash and be injured.

What can you do about highway hypnosis? First, be aware that it can happen.

Then here are some tips:

- Make sure your vehicle is well ventilated, with a comfortably cool interior.
- Keep your eyes moving. Scan the road ahead and to the sides. Check your mirrors and your instruments frequently.
- If you get sleepy, pull off the road into a rest, service, or parking area and take a nap, get some exercise, or both. For safety, treat drowsiness on the highway as an emergency.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or mountains is different from driving in flat or rolling terrain.

If you drive regularly in steep country, or if you are planning to visit there, here are some tips that can make your trips safer and more enjoyable. See *Off-Road Driving on page 260* for information about driving off-road.

- Keep your vehicle in good shape. Check all fluid levels and also the brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission. These parts can work hard on mountain roads.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you do not shift down, your brakes could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let your engine assist your brakes on a steep downhill slope.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Coasting downhill in NEUTRAL (N) or with the ignition off is dangerous. Your brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down. They could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have your engine running and your vehicle in gear when you go downhill.

- Know how to go down hills. The most important thing to know is this: let your engine do some of the slowing down. Shift to a lower gear when you go down a steep or long hill.
- Know how to go uphill. You may want to shift down to a lower gear. The lower gears help cool your engine and transmission, and you can climb the hill better.
- Stay in your own lane when driving on two-lane roads in hills or mountains. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- As you go over the top of a hill, be alert. There could be something in your lane, like a stalled car or an accident.
- You may see highway signs on mountains that warn of special problems. Examples are long grades, passing or no-passing zones, a falling rocks area, or winding roads. Be alert to these and take appropriate action.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Winter Driving

Here are some tips for winter driving:

- Have your vehicle in good shape for winter.
- You may want to put winter emergency supplies in your vehicle.

Also see *Tires on page 377*.

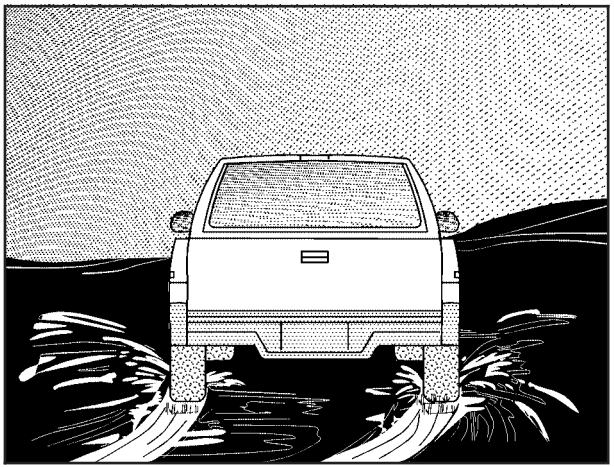
Include an ice scraper, a small brush or broom, a supply of windshield washer fluid, a rag, some winter outer clothing, a small shovel, a flashlight, a red cloth, and a couple of reflective warning triangles. And, if you will be driving under severe conditions, include a small bag of sand, a piece of old carpet, or a couple of burlap bags to help provide traction. Be sure you properly secure these items in your vehicle.

Driving on Snow or Ice

Most of the time, those places where the tires meet the road probably have good traction.

However, if there is snow or ice between the tires and the road, you can have a very slippery situation. You will have a lot less traction, or grip, and will need to be very careful.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



What is the worst time for this? Wet ice. Very cold snow or ice can be slick and hard to drive on. But wet ice can be even more trouble because it may offer the least traction of all. You can get wet ice when it is about freezing, 32°F (0°C), and freezing rain begins to fall. Try to avoid driving on wet ice until salt and sand crews can get there.

Whatever the condition — smooth ice, packed, blowing, or loose snow — drive with caution.

Accelerate gently. Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more.

The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) improves your vehicle's stability when you make a hard stop on a slippery road. Even though you have ABS, you will want to begin stopping sooner than you would on dry pavement. See *Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) on page 251*.

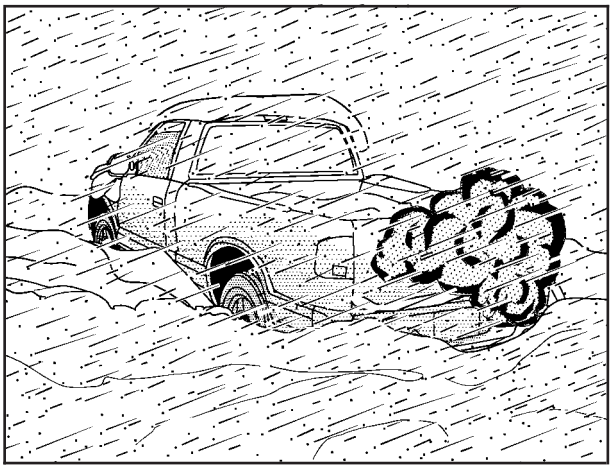
- Allow greater following distance on any slippery road.
- Watch for slippery spots. The road might be fine until you hit a spot that is covered with ice. On an otherwise clear road, ice patches may appear in shaded areas where the sun cannot reach, such as around clumps of trees, behind buildings, or under bridges. Sometimes the surface of a curve or an overpass may remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. If you see a patch of ice ahead of you, brake before you are on it. Try not to brake while you are actually on the ice, and avoid sudden steering maneuvers.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If You Are Caught in a Blizzard

If you are stopped by heavy snow, you could be in a serious situation. You should probably stay with your vehicle unless you know for sure that you are near help and you can hike through the snow. Here are some things to do to summon help and keep yourself and your passengers safe:

- Turn on your hazard flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to your vehicle to alert police that you have been stopped by the snow.
- Put on extra clothing or wrap a blanket around you. If you do not have blankets or extra clothing, make body insulators from newspapers, burlap bags, rags, floor mats — anything you can wrap around yourself or tuck under your clothing to keep warm.



You can run the engine to keep warm, but be careful.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Snow can trap exhaust gases under your vehicle. This can cause deadly CO (carbon monoxide) gas to get inside. CO could overcome you and kill you. You cannot see it or smell it, so you might not know it is in your vehicle. Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking your exhaust pipe. And check around again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.

Open a window just a little on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind. This will help keep CO out.

Run your engine only as long as you must. This saves fuel. When you run the engine, make it go a little faster than just idle. That is, push the accelerator slightly. This uses less fuel for the heat that you get and it keeps the battery charged. You will need a well-charged battery to restart the vehicle, and possibly for signaling later on with your headlamps. Let the heater run for a while.

Then, shut the engine off and close the window almost all the way to preserve the heat. Start the engine again and repeat this only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. But do it as little as possible. Preserve the fuel as long as you can. To help keep warm, you can get out of the vehicle and do some fairly vigorous exercises every half hour or so until help comes.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow

In order to free your vehicle when it is stuck, you will need to spin the wheels, but you do not want to spin your wheels too fast. The method known as rocking can help you get out when you are stuck, but you must use caution.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you let your vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. And, the vehicle can overheat. That could cause an engine compartment fire or other damage. When you are stuck, spin the wheels as little as possible. Do not spin the wheels above 35 mph (55 km/h) as shown on the speedometer.

Notice: **Spinning the wheels can destroy parts of your vehicle as well as the tires. If you spin the wheels too fast while shifting the transmission back and forth, you can destroy the transmission.**

For information about using tire chains on your vehicle, see *Tire Chains on page 400*.

Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out

First, turn the steering wheel left and right. That will clear the area around the front wheels. If you have a four-wheel-drive vehicle, shift into 4HI. If your vehicle has traction control, turn the traction control system off. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 253*. Then shift back and forth between REVERSE (R) and a forward gear, or with a manual transmission, between FIRST (1) or SECOND (2) and REVERSE (R), spinning the wheels as little as possible. Release the accelerator pedal while you shift, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear.

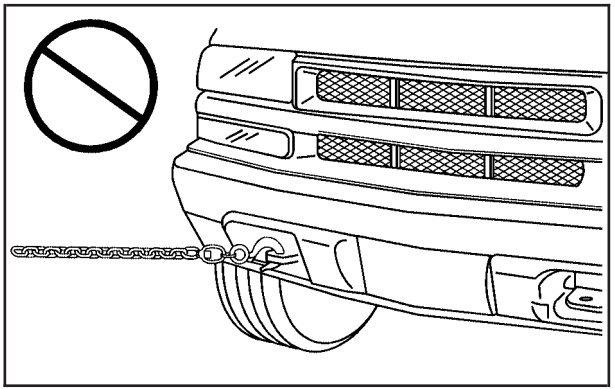
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

By slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions, you will cause a rocking motion that may free your vehicle. If that does not get your vehicle out after a few tries, it may need to be towed out.Or, you can use the recovery hooks if your vehicle has them. If your vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing Your Vehicle on page 297*.

Recovery Hooks

⚠ CAUTION:

These hooks, when used, are under a lot of force. Always pull the vehicle straight out. Never pull on the hooks at a sideways angle. The hooks could break off and you or others could be injured from the chain or cable snapping back.



Notice: **Never use recovery hooks to tow the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged and it would not be covered by warranty.**

Your vehicle may have recovery hooks at the front of the vehicle. You may need to use them if you are stuck off-road and need to be pulled to some place where you can continue driving.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

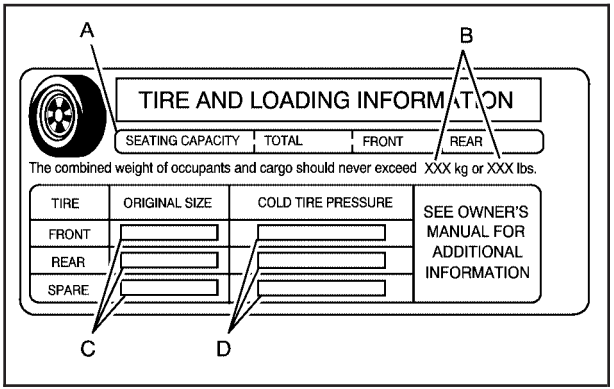
Loading Your Vehicle

It is very important to know how much weight your vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on your vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry, the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification/Tire label.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

Tire and Loading Information Label



Label Example

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). With the driver's door open, you will find the label attached below the door latch post. Vehicle's without a center pillar, like extended cab models, will have the Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver's side extended cab door, above the door latch post.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

The Tire and Loading Information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (A), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (B) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tire and Loading Information label also shows the size of the original equipment tires (C) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (D). For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires on page 377* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 385*.

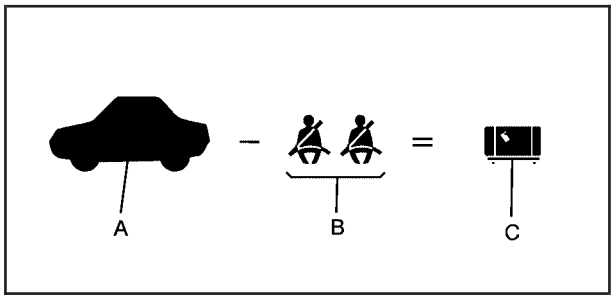
There is also important information on the Certification/Tire label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axles. See “Certification/Tire Label” later in this section.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1400 – 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

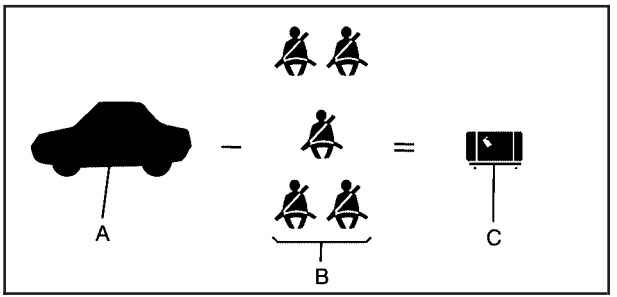
   See *Towing a Trailer on page 305* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety, and trailering tips.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



Example 1

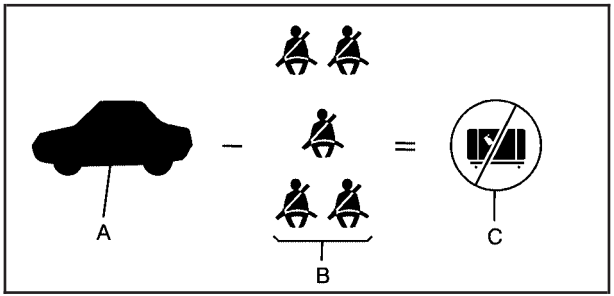
Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) x 2 =	300 lbs (136 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	700 lbs (317 kg)



Example 2

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) x 5 =	750 lbs (340 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	250 lbs (113 kg)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

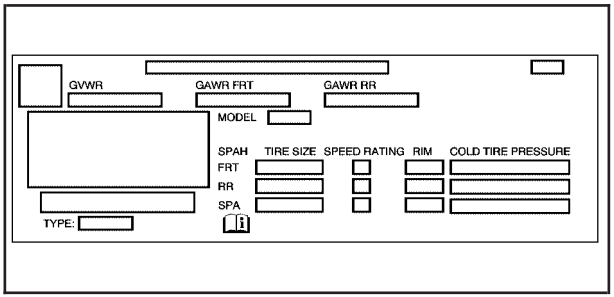


Example 3

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 200 lbs (91 kg) x 5 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	0 lbs (0 kg)

Refer to your vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label for specific information about your vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, cargo, and any accessories or equipment added to your vehicle after it left the factory should never exceed your vehicle's capacity weight.

Certification/Tire Label



Label Example

A vehicle specific Certification/Tire label is attached to the bottom section of the center pillar, on the driver's side of the vehicle. Vehicles without a center pillar, like extended cab models, will have the Certification/Tire label attached to the edge of the driver's side, extended cab door, below the door latch post. The label shows the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, cargo, and trailer tongue weight, if pulling a trailer.

The Certification/Tire label also tells you the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). To find out the actual loads on your front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh your vehicle. Your dealer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out your load equally on both sides of the centerline.

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, or the GAWR for either the front or rear axle.

If you do have a heavy load, you should spread it out.

Similar appearing vehicles may have different GVWRs and capacity weights. Please note your vehicle's Certification/Tire label or consult your dealer for additional details.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

Using heavier suspension components to get added durability might not change your weight ratings. Ask your dealer to help you load your vehicle the right way.

Notice: **Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If you put things inside your vehicle — like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else — they will go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they will keep going.

⚠ CAUTION:

Things you put inside your vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- **Put things in the cargo area of your vehicle. Try to spread the weight evenly.**
- **Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.**
- **Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in your vehicle.**
- **When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.**
- **Do not leave a seat folded down unless you need to.**

There is also important loading information for off-road driving in this manual. See *"Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving"* under *Off-Road Driving on page 260*.

Remember not to exceed the Gross Axle Weight rating (GAWR) of the front or rear axle.

Two-Tiered Loading

By positioning four 2" X 6" wooden planks across the width of the pickup box, you can create an upper load platform. The planks must be inserted in the pickup box depressions. The length of the planks must allow for at least a 3/4 inch (2 cm) bearing surface on each end of the plank.

When using this upper load platform, be sure the load is securely tied down to prevent it from shifting. The load's center of gravity should be positioned in a zone over the rear axle.

Any load that extends beyond the vehicle's taillamp area must be properly marked according to local laws and regulations.

Remember not to exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) of the rear axle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Add-On Equipment

When you carry removable items, you may need to put a limit on how many people you carry inside your vehicle. Be sure to weigh your vehicle before you buy and install the new equipment.

Notice: **Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.**

Remember not to exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) of the rear axle.

A reinforcement kit for mounting a toolbox is recommended. See your dealer.

Truck-Camper Loading Information

Your vehicle was not designed to carry a slide-in camper.

Pickup Conversion to Chassis Cab

General Motors is aware that some vehicle owners may consider having the pickup box removed and a commercial or recreational body installed. However, we recommend that conversions of this type not be done to pickups. Owners should be aware that, as manufactured, there are differences between a chassis cab and a pickup with the box removed which may affect vehicle safety.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Towing

Towing Your Vehicle

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if you need to have your disabled vehicle towed. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 470*.

If you want to tow your vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes (such as behind a motorhome), see “Recreational Vehicle Towing” following.

Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing your vehicle behind another vehicle — such as behind a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as “dinghy” (towing your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground) and “dolly” (towing your vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a “dolly”).

With the proper preparation and equipment, many vehicles can be towed in these ways. See “Dinghy Towing” and “Dolly Towing” following.

Here are some important things to consider before you do recreational vehicle towing:

- What’s the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure you read the tow vehicle manufacturer’s recommendations.
- How far will you tow? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Do you have the proper towing equipment? See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is your vehicle ready to be towed? Just as you would prepare your vehicle for a long trip, you’ll want to make sure your vehicle is prepared to be towed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

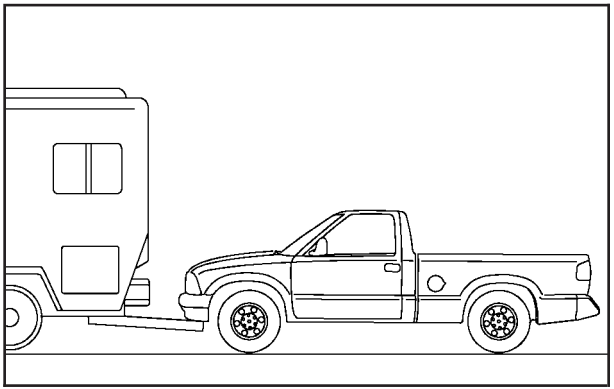
Dinghy Towing

Two-Wheel Drive Vehicles

Notice: **If you tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, the drivetrain components could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground.**

Two-wheel-drive vehicles should not be towed with all four wheels on the ground. Two-wheel-drive transmissions have no provisions for internal lubrication while being towed.

Four-Wheel Drive Vehicles



Use the following procedure to tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground:

1. Drive the vehicle to be towed into position behind the tow vehicle.
2. Firmly set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 130* for more information.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Put an automatic transmission in PARK (P) or a manual transmission in FIRST (1).
4. Securely attach the vehicle being towed to the tow vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Shifting a four-wheel-drive vehicle's transfer case into NEUTRAL can cause your vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in PARK (P) for an automatic transmission, or if your vehicle is in gear, for a manual transmission. You or others could be injured. Make sure the parking brake is firmly set before you shift the transfer case to NEUTRAL.

5. Shift the transfer case to NEUTRAL. See *Four-Wheel Drive on page 126* for more information.
6. Release the parking brake only after the vehicle being towed is firmly attached to the tow vehicle.
7. Turn the ignition to LOCK.

   If the tow vehicle will not be started or driven for six weeks or more, remove the battery cable from the negative terminal (post) of the battery to prevent your battery from draining while towing.

After towing see "Shifting Out of NEUTRAL" under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 126*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Dolly Towing

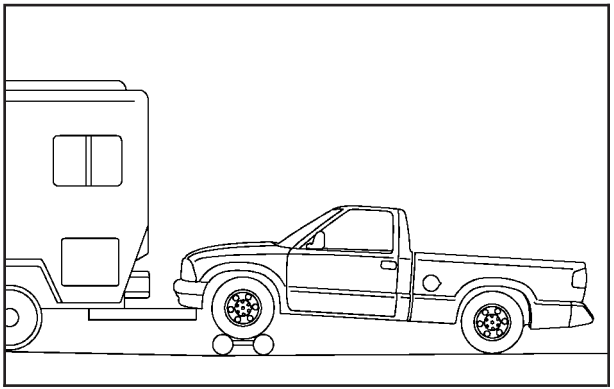
Front Towing (Front Wheels Off the Ground)

Two-Wheel-Drive Vehicles

Notice: **If you tow a two-wheel-drive vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground, the transmission could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Never tow your vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground.**

Two-wheel-drive vehicles should not be towed with the rear wheels on the ground. Two-wheel-drive transmissions have no provisions for internal lubrication while being towed. To dolly tow a two-wheel-drive vehicle, you must tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the dolly. See “Rear Towing (Rear Wheels Off the Ground)” later in this section for more information.

Four-Wheel-Drive Vehicles



Use the following procedure to dolly tow your vehicle from the front:

1. Drive the vehicle onto the dolly.
2. Firmly set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 130* for more information.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Put an automatic transmission in PARK (P) or a manual transmission in FIRST (1).
4. Follow the dolly manufacturer's instructions to attach and secure the vehicle being towed to the dolly and then the loaded dolly to the tow vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Shifting a four-wheel-drive vehicle's transfer case into NEUTRAL can cause your vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in PARK (P) for an automatic transmission, or if your vehicle is in gear, for a manual transmission. You or others could be injured. Make sure the parking brake is firmly set before you shift the transfer case to NEUTRAL.

5. Shift the transfer case to NEUTRAL. See *Four-Wheel Drive on page 126* for more information.
6. Release the parking brake only after the vehicle being towed is firmly attached to the tow vehicle.
7. Turn the ignition to LOCK.

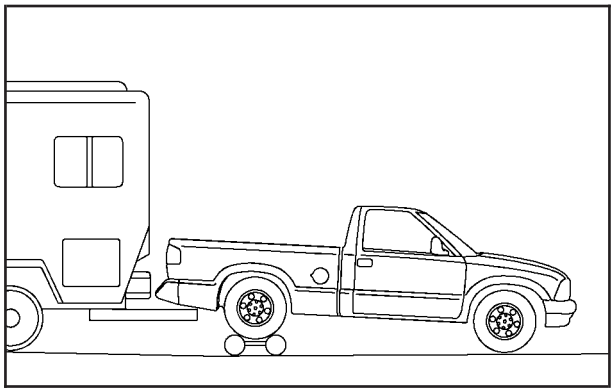
   If the tow vehicle will not be started or driven for six weeks or more, remove the battery cable from the negative terminal (post) of the battery to prevent your battery from draining while towing.

After towing see "Shifting Out of NEUTRAL" under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 126*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Towing (Rear Wheels Off the Ground)

Two-Wheel-Drive Vehicles



Use the following procedure to tow your vehicle from the rear:

1. Drive the vehicle onto the dolly.
2. Firmly set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 130* for more information.
3. Put an automatic transmission in PARK (P) or a manual transmission in FIRST (1).
4. Follow the dolly manufacturer's instructions to attach and secure the vehicle being towed to the dolly and then the loaded dolly to the tow vehicle. Make sure the wheels are straight before towing.

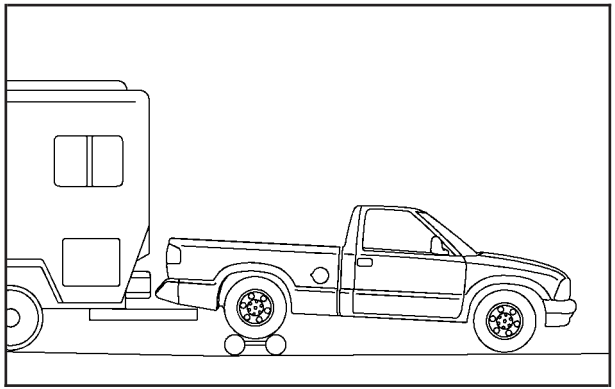
   For manual transmission vehicles, make sure the wheels are straight before proceeding to the next steps. On automatic transmission vehicles, use an adequate clamping device to ensure that the front wheels are locked into the straight position.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Release the parking brake only after the vehicle being towed is firmly attached to the tow vehicle.
6. Turn the ignition to LOCK.

If the tow vehicle will not be started or driven for six weeks or more, remove the battery cable from the negative terminal (post) of the battery to prevent your battery from draining while towing.

Four-Wheel-Drive Vehicles



Use the following procedure to tow your vehicle from the rear:

1. Drive the vehicle onto the dolly.
2. Firmly set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 130* for more information.
3. Put an automatic transmission in PARK (P) or a manual transmission in FIRST (1).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Follow the dolly manufacturer's instructions to attach and secure the vehicle being towed to the dolly and then the loaded dolly to the tow vehicle.

   For manual transmission vehicles, make sure the wheels are straight before proceeding to the next steps. On automatic transmission vehicles, use an adequate clamping device to ensure that the front wheels are locked into the straight position.

⚠ CAUTION:

Shifting a four-wheel-drive vehicle's transfer case into NEUTRAL can cause your vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in PARK (P) for an automatic transmission, or if your vehicle is in gear, for a manual transmission. You or others could be injured. Make sure the parking brake is firmly set before you shift the transfer case to NEUTRAL.

5. Shift the transfer case to NEUTRAL. See *Four-Wheel Drive on page 126* for more information.
6. Release the parking brake only after the vehicle being towed is firmly attached to the tow vehicle.
7. Turn the ignition to LOCK.

   If the tow vehicle will not be started or driven for six weeks or more, remove the battery cable from the negative terminal (post) of the battery to prevent your battery from draining while towing.

After towing, see "Shifting Out of NEUTRAL" under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 126*.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Towing a Trailer

⚠ CAUTION:

If you do not use the correct equipment and drive properly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well — or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer with your vehicle.

Notice: **Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs that would not be covered by your warranty. Always follow the instructions in this section and check with your dealer for more information about towing a trailer with your vehicle.**

To identify the trailering capacity of your vehicle, you should read the information in "Weight of the Trailer" that appears later in this section.

Trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, acceleration, braking, durability and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

That's the reason for this part. In it are many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. So please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If You Do Decide To Pull A Trailer

If you do, here are some important points:

- There are many different laws, including speed limit restrictions, having to do with trailering. Make sure your rig will be legal, not only where you live but also where you'll be driving. A good source for this information can be state or provincial police.
- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a hitch dealer about sway controls.
- Don't tow a trailer at all during the first 500 miles (800 km) your new vehicle is driven. Your engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (800 km) that you tow a trailer, don't drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and don't make starts at full throttle. This helps your engine and other parts of your vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.
- You may want to shift the transmission to THIRD (3) or, if necessary, a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often (e.g., under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions). If you have a manual transmission and you are towing a trailer, it's better not to use the highest gear.

Three important considerations have to do with weight:

- the weight of the trailer,
- the weight of the trailer tongue
- and the weight on your vehicle's tires.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It depends on how you plan to use your rig. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry. See “Weight of the Trailer Tongue” later in this section for more information.

Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming only the driver is in the tow vehicle and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

The following charts show how much your trailer can weigh, based upon your vehicle model and options.

2WD Regular Cab	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR*
Automatic Transmission, 2.9L Engine	3.73	3,300 lbs (1 497 kg)	7,000 lbs (3 175 kg)
Automatic Transmission, 3.7L Engine	3.73	4,000 lbs (1 814 kg)	8,500 lbs (3 855 kg)
Manual Transmission, 2.9L Engine	3.73	2,300 lbs (1 043 kg)	6,000 lbs (2 722 kg)

2WD Reg. Cab/mid-box	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR*
Automatic Transmission, 2.9L Engine	3.73	3,200 lbs (1 451 kg)	7,000 lbs (3 175 kg)
Automatic Transmission, 3.7L Engine	3.73	4,000 lbs (1 814 kg)	9,000 lbs (4 082 kg)
Manual Transmission, 2.9L Engine	3.73	2,200 lbs (997 kg)	6,000 lbs (2 722 kg)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2WD Extended Cab	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR*
Automatic Transmission, 2.9L Engine	3.73	3,100 lbs (1 406 kg)	7,000 lbs (3 175 kg)
Automatic Transmission, 3.7L Engine	3.73	4,000 lbs (1 814 kg)	9,000 lbs (4 082 kg)
Manual Transmission, 2.9L Engine	3.73	2,100 lbs (952 kg)	6,000 lbs (2 722 kg)

2WD Crew Cab	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR*
Automatic Transmission, 2.9L Engine	3.73	2,900 lbs (1 315 kg)	7,000 lbs (3 175 kg)
Automatic Transmission, 3.7L Engine	3.73	4,000 lbs (1 814 kg)	9,000 lbs (4 082 kg)
Manual Transmission, 2.9L Engine	3.73	1,900 lbs (862 kg)	6,000 lbs (2 722 kg)

4WD Regular Cab	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR*
Automatic Transmission, 2.9L Engine	3.73	3,000 lbs (1 361 kg)	7,000 lbs (3 175 kg)
Automatic Transmission, 2.9L Engine	4.10	3,000 lbs (1 361 kg)	7,000 lbs (3 175 kg)
Automatic Transmission, 3.7L Engine	3.73	4,000 lbs (1 814 kg)	9,000 lbs (4 082 kg)
Manual Transmission, 2.9L Engine	3.73	2,000 lbs (907 kg)	6,000 lbs (2 722 kg)
Manual Transmission, 2.9L Engine	4.10	2,000 lbs (907 kg)	6,000 lbs (2 722 kg)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

4WD Extended Cab	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR*
Automatic Transmission, 2.9L Engine	3.73	2,900 lbs (1 315 kg)	7,000 lbs (3 175 kg)
Automatic Transmission, 2.9L Engine	4.10	2,900 lbs (1 315 kg)	7,000 lbs (3 175 kg)
Automatic Transmission, 3.7L Engine	3.73	4,000 lbs (1 814 kg)	9,000 lbs (4 082 kg)
Manual Transmission, 2.9L Engine	3.73	1,900 lbs (861 kg)	6,000 lbs (2 722 kg)
Manual Transmission, 2.9L Engine	4.10	1,900 lbs (861 kg)	6,000 lbs (2 722 kg)

4WD Crew Cab	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR*
Automatic Transmission, 3.7L Engine	3.73	4,000 lbs (1 814 kg)	9,000 lbs (4 082 kg)

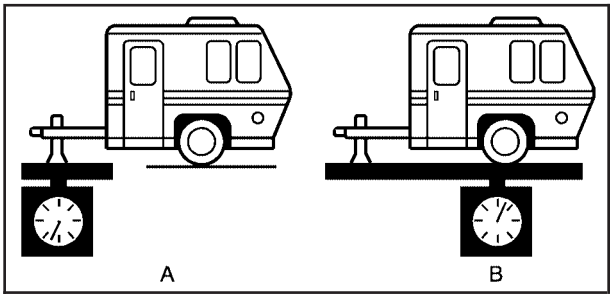
*The Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR) is the total allowable weight of the completely loaded vehicle and trailer including any passengers, cargo, equipment and conversions. The GCWR for your vehicle should not be exceeded.

You can ask your dealer for our trailering information or advice, or you can write us at our Customer Assistance Offices. See *Customer Assistance Offices on page 468* for more information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total or gross weight of your vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. If you have a lot of options, equipment, passengers or cargo in your vehicle, it will reduce the tongue weight your vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight your vehicle can tow. And if you will tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290* for more information about your vehicle's maximum load capacity.



The trailer tongue weight (A) should be 10 percent to 15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight, up to a maximum of 500 lbs (226 kg) with a weight carrying hitch.

Do not exceed the maximum allowable tongue weight for your vehicle. Choose the shortest hitch extension that will position the hitch ball closest to the vehicle. This will help reduce the effect of trailer tongue weight on the rear axle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't you may be able to get them right simply by moving some of the items around in the trailer.

Trailering may be limited by the vehicle's ability to carry tongue weight. Tongue weight cannot cause the vehicle to exceed the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) or the RGAWR (Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating). The effect of additional weight may reduce your trailering capacity more than the total of the additional weight.

Consider the following example:

A vehicle model base weight is 5,500 lbs (2 495 kg); 2,800 lbs (1 270 kg) at the front axle and 2,700 lbs (1 225 kg) at the rear axle. It has a GVWR of 7,200 lbs (3 266 kg), a RGAWR of 4,000 lbs (1 814 kg) and a GCWR (Gross Combination Weight Rating) of 14,000 lbs (6 350 kg).

The trailer rating should be:

14,000 lbs (6350 kg)	GCWR
–5,500 lbs (2495 kg)	Vehicle Weight
8,500 lbs (3855 kg)	Trailer Rating

You can expect tongue weight to be at least 10 percent of trailer weight (850 lbs (386 kg)) and because the weight is applied well behind the rear axle, the effect on the rear axle will be greater than just the weight itself, as much as 1.5 times as much. The weight at the rear axle could be 850 lbs (386 kg) X 1.5 = 1,275 lbs (578 kg). Since the rear axle already weighs 2,700 lbs (1 225 kg), adding 1,275 lbs (578 kg) brings the total to 3,975 lbs (1 803 kg). This is very close to, but within the limit for RGAWR as well. The vehicle is set to trailer up to 8,500 lbs (3 856 kg).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

But let's say your specific vehicle is equipped with some of the latest options and you have a front seat passenger and two rear seat passengers with some luggage and gear in the vehicle as well. You may add 300 lbs (136 kg) to the front axle weight and 400 lbs (181 kg) to the rear axle weight. Your vehicle now weighs:

2,800 lbs	(1270 kg)	+	300 lbs (136 kg)	Front
2,700 lbs	(1225 kg)	+	400 lbs (181 kg)	Rear
	6,200 lbs (2812 kg)			Total

Weight is still below 7,200 lbs (3 266 kg) and you may think that you should subtract 700 additional pounds (318 kg) from your trailering capacity to stay within GCWR limits. Your maximum trailer would only be 7,800 lbs (3 538 kg).

You may go further and think you must limit tongue weight to less than 1,000 lbs (454 kg) to avoid exceeding GVWR. But, you must still consider the effect on the rear axle. Because your rear axle now weighs 3,100 lbs (1 406 kg), you can only put 900 lbs (408 kg) on the rear axle without exceeding RGAWR. The effect of tongue weight is about 1.5 times the actual weight. Dividing the 900 lbs (408 kg) by 1.5 leaves you with being able to handle only 600 lbs (272 kg) of tongue weight. Since tongue weight is usually at least 10 percent of total loaded trailer weight, you can expect that the largest trailer your vehicle can properly handle is 6,000 lbs (2 721 kg).

It is important that you make sure your vehicle does not exceed any of its ratings — GCWR, GVWR, RGAWR, Maximum Trailer Rating or Tongue Weight. The only way to be sure you are not exceeding any of these ratings is to weigh your vehicle and trailer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Total Weight on Your Vehicle's Tires

Be sure your vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. You'll find these numbers on the Certification/Tire label located at the bottom of the center pillar on the driver's side of the vehicle, or see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*. Then be sure you don't go over the GVWR limit for your vehicle, including the weight of the trailer tongue.

Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch.

Weight-Distributing Hitches and Weight Carrying Hitches

You can use your step bumper hitch for trailers up to 2,000 lbs (907 kg) total weight, and 200 lbs (90 kg) tongue weight.

Notice: **If you use a step-bumper hitch, your bumper could be damaged in sharp turns. Make sure you have ample room when turning to avoid contact between the trailer and the bumper.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. For trailers up to 2,000 lbs (907 kg) you may attach the safety chains to the attaching points on the bumper. For heavier trailers, follow the trailer or hitch manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your rig. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

If your trailer weighs more than 1,000 lbs (450 kg) loaded, then it needs its own brakes — and they must be adequate. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

Your trailer's brake system can tap into the vehicle's hydraulic brake system only if:

- The trailer parts can withstand 3,000 psi (20 650 kPa) of pressure.
- The trailer's brake system will use less than 0.02 cubic inch (0.3 cc) of fluid from your vehicle's master cylinder. Otherwise, both braking systems won't work well. You could even lose your brakes.

If everything checks out this far, then make the brake fluid tap at the port on the master cylinder that sends fluid to the rear brakes. But don't use copper tubing for this. If you do, it will bend and finally break off. Use steel brake tubing.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving with a Trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you'll want to get to know your rig. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connector, lamps, tires and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are still working.

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because you're a good deal longer, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Making Turns

Notice: **Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.**

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have extra wiring and a heavy-duty turn signal flasher.

The arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps will also flash, telling other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes or stop.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signal when they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

Driving On Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

When towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, consider the following: Engine coolant will boil at a lower temperature than at normal altitudes. If you turn your engine off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, your vehicle may show signs similar to engine overheating. To avoid this, let the engine run while parked (preferably on level ground) with the automatic transmission in PARK (P) (or the manual transmission out of gear and the parking brake applied) for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If you do get the overheat warning, see *Engine Overheating on page 348*.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Parking on Hills

⚠ CAUTION:

You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill. If something goes wrong, your rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged.

But if you ever have to park your rig on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Apply your regular brakes, but don't shift into PARK (P) yet, or into gear for a manual transmission. When parking uphill, turn your wheels away from the curb. When parking downhill, turn your wheels into the curb.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the regular brakes. Then apply your parking brake, and then shift into PARK (P), or REVERSE (R) for a manual transmission. See *Parking Brake on page 130* for more information.
5. If you have a four-wheel-drive vehicle, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear and not in NEUTRAL. See *Four-Wheel Drive on page 126* for more information.
6. Release the regular brakes.

When You Are Ready to Leave After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply your regular brakes and hold the pedal down while you:
   - start your engine,
   - shift into a gear, and
   - release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance When Trailer Towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you're pulling a trailer. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 445* for more on this. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid (don't overfill), engine oil, axle lubricant, belt, cooling system and brake system. Each of these is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

Trailer Wiring Harness

Your vehicle may be equipped with a four-pin trailer towing harness. This harness has a four-pin trailer connector that is attached to a bracket on the hitch platform. The four-wire harness contains the following trailer circuits:

- Yellow: Left Stop/Turn Signal
- Green: Right Stop/Turn Signal
- Brown: Taillamps/Park lamps
- White: Ground

Trailer Recommendations

You must subtract your hitch load from the CWR for your vehicle. Weigh your vehicle with your trailer attached, so that you won't go over the GVWR or the GAWR.

You'll get the best performance if you spread out the weight of your load the right way, and if you choose the correct hitch and trailer brakes.

For more information, see *Towing a Trailer on page 305* later in this section.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

Service 322
- Accessories and Modifications 323
- California Proposition 65 Warning 323
- Doing Your Own Service Work 324
- Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle 325

Fuel 325
- Gasoline Octane 325
- Gasoline Specifications 325
- California Fuel 326
- Additives 326
- Fuels in Foreign Countries 327
- Filling the Tank 328
- Filling a Portable Fuel Container 330

Checking Things Under the Hood 330
- Hood Release 331
- Engine Compartment Overview 332
- Engine Oil 333
- Engine Oil Life System 336
- Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 338
- Automatic Transmission Fluid 339
- Manual Transmission Fluid 342
- Hydraulic Clutch 344
- Engine Coolant 345
- Radiator Pressure Cap 348
- Engine Overheating 348
- Cooling System 350
- Engine Fan Noise 355
- Power Steering Fluid 355
- Windshield Washer Fluid 356
- Brakes 357
- Battery 361
- Jump Starting 362

Rear Axle 368

Four-Wheel Drive 368

Front Axle 369

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

Bulb Replacement 370
- Halogen Bulbs 370
- Headlamps 371
- Front Turn Signal, Parking and Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 372
- Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) 372
- Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps 373
- License Plate Lamp 374
- Replacement Bulbs 374

Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement 375

Tires 377
- Tire Sidewall Labeling 378
- Tire Terminology and Definitions 382
- Inflation - Tire Pressure 385
- Tire Pressure Monitor System 386
- Tire Inspection and Rotation 391
- When It Is Time for New Tires 393
- Buying New Tires 394
- Different Size Tires and Wheels 396
- Uniform Tire Quality Grading 397
- Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 398
- Wheel Replacement 398
- Tire Chains 400
- If a Tire Goes Flat 401
- Changing a Flat Tire 402
- Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 403
- Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire 406
- Secondary Latch System 414
- Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools 418
- Spare Tire 422

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

Appearance Care 424
- Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle 424
- Fabric/Carpet 425
- Leather 426
- Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 427
- Care of Safety Belts 427
- Weatherstrips 427
- Washing Your Vehicle 428
- Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses 428
- Finish Care 428
- Windshield and Wiper Blades 429
- Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels 430
- Tires 431
- Sheet Metal Damage 431
- Finish Damage 431
- Underbody Maintenance 432
- Chemical Paint Spotting 432
- Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials 433

Vehicle Identification 434
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 434
- Service Parts Identification Label 434

Electrical System 434
- Add-On Electrical Equipment 434
- Windshield Wiper Fuses 435
- Fuses and Circuit Breakers 435
- Engine Compartment Fuse Block 435

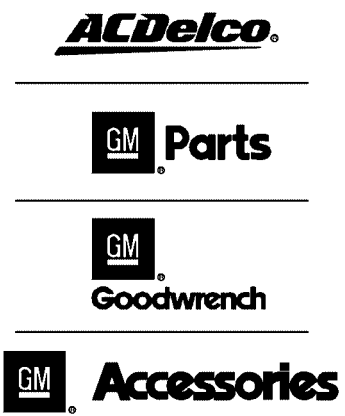
Capacities and Specifications 439

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Service

Your dealer knows your vehicle best and wants you to be happy with it. We hope you will go to your dealer for all your service needs. You will get genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

We hope you will want to keep your GM vehicle all GM. Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Accessories and Modifications

When you add non-GM accessories to your vehicle they can affect your vehicle's performance and safety, including such things as, airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like anti-lock brakes, traction control and stability control. Some of these accessories may even cause malfunction or damage not covered by warranty.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on your vehicle. Your GM dealer can accessorize your vehicle using genuine GM Accessories. When you go to your GM dealer and ask for GM Accessories, you will know that GM-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine GM Accessories.

California Proposition 65 Warning

Most motor vehicles, including this one, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems (including some inside the vehicle), many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Doing Your Own Service Work

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be injured and your vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.

- **Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts, and tools before you attempt any vehicle maintenance task.**
- **Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts, and other fasteners. English and metric fasteners can be easily confused. If you use the wrong fasteners, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.**

If you want to do some of your own service work, you will want to use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service your vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 482*.

Your vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 92*.

You should keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work you perform. See *Maintenance Record on page 460*.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle

Things you might add to the outside of your vehicle can affect the airflow around it. This may cause wind noise and affect windshield washer performance. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of your vehicle.

Fuel

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of your vehicle. To help keep your engine clean and maintain optimum vehicle performance, GM recommends the use of gasoline advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline.

Gasoline Octane

Use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 87 or higher. If the octane rating is less than 87, you may notice an audible knocking noise when you drive, commonly referred to as spark knock. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. If you are using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher and you hear heavy knocking, your engine needs service.

Gasoline Specifications

At a minimum, gasoline should meet ASTM specification D 4814 in the United States or CAN/CGSB-3.5 in Canada. Some gasolines may contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). General Motors recommends against the use of gasolines containing MMT. See *Additives on page 326* for additional information.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

California Fuel

If your vehicle is certified to meet California Emissions Standards, it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. See the underhood emission control label. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California emissions standards, your vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance may be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on and your vehicle may fail a smog-check test. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 190*. If this occurs, return to your authorized GM dealer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs may not be covered by your warranty.

Additives

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that will help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming, allowing your emission control system to work properly. In most cases, you should not have to add anything to your fuel. However, some gasolines contain only the minimum amount of additive required to meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulations. To help keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean, or if your vehicle experiences problems due to dirty injectors or valves, look for gasoline that is advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. Also, your dealer has additives that will help correct and prevent most deposit-related problems.

Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines may be available in your area. General Motors recommends that you use these gasolines if they comply with the specifications described earlier. However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 10% ethanol must not be used in vehicles that were not designed for those fuels.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **Your vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in your fuel system and also damage the plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under your warranty.**

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions may contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy gasoline whether the fuel contains MMT. General Motors recommends against the use of such gasolines. Fuels containing MMT can reduce the life of spark plugs and the performance of the emission control system may be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on. If this occurs, return to your dealer for service.

Fuels in Foreign Countries

If you plan on driving in another country outside the United States or Canada, the proper fuel may be hard to find. Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel would not be covered by your warranty.

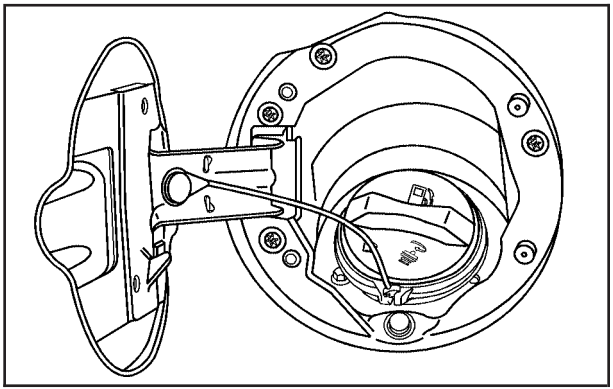
To check the fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you will be driving.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Filling the Tank

⚠ CAUTION:

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause bad injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the pump island. Turn off your engine when you are refueling. Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle. Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel. Do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle. This is against the law in some places. Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.



The tethered fuel cap is located behind a hinged fuel door on the driver's side of the vehicle.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly counterclockwise.

While refueling, hang the tethered fuel cap from the hook on the fuel door.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

If you spill fuel and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. Fuel can spray out on you if you open the fuel cap too quickly. This spray can happen if your tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Washing Your Vehicle on page 428*.

When replacing the fuel cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere.

If the fuel cap is not properly installed, the FUEL CAP message will appear on the Driver Information Center (DIC) and the check engine light will be lit on the instrument panel cluster. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 200* and *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 190* for more information.

⚠ CAUTION:

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

Notice: **If you need a new fuel cap, be sure to get the right type. Your dealer can get one for you. If you get the wrong type, it may not fit properly. This may cause your malfunction indicator lamp to light and may damage your fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 190*.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ CAUTION:

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in your vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the gasoline vapor. You can be badly burned and your vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- **Dispense gasoline only into approved containers.**
- **Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.**
- **Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.**
- **Do not smoke while pumping gasoline.**

Checking Things Under the Hood

⚠ CAUTION:

Things that burn can get on hot engine parts and start a fire. These include liquids like fuel, oil, coolant, brake fluid, windshield washer and other fluids, and plastic or rubber. You or others could be burned. Be careful not to drop or spill things that will burn onto a hot engine.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Hood Release

To open the hood, do the following:

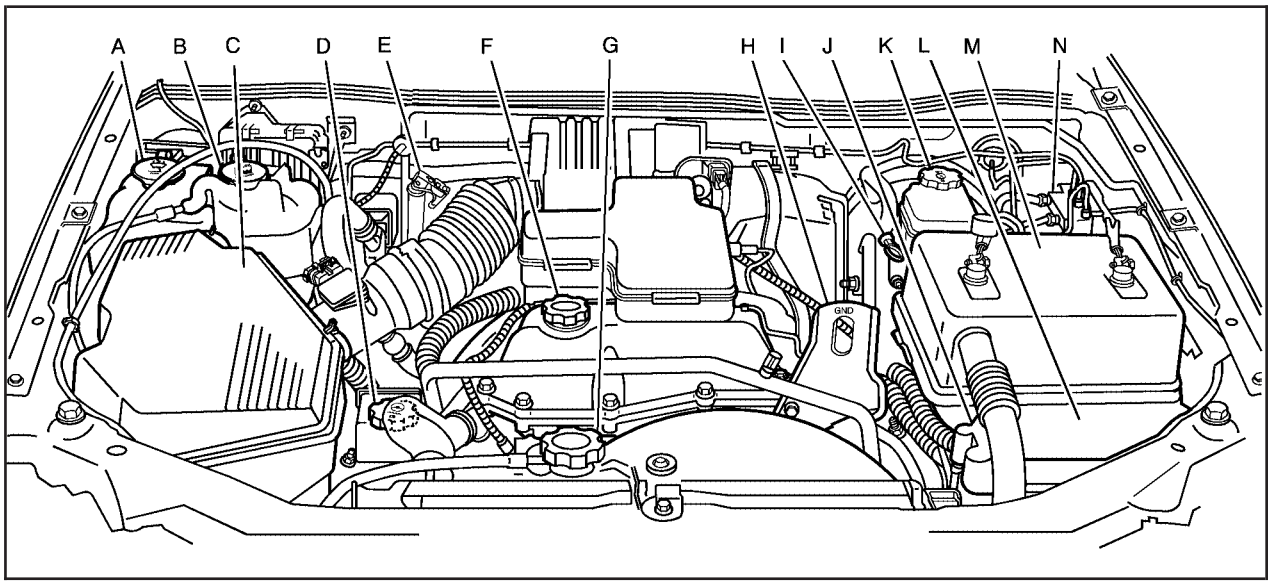
1. Pull the handle with this symbol on it. It is located inside the vehicle on the lower left side of the instrument panel.
2. Release the secondary latch on the hood. It is located below the front center of the hood.
3. Lift the hood.
4. Release the hood prop from its retainer and put the hood prop into the slot in the hood.

Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are on properly. Then lift the hood to relieve pressure on the hood prop. Remove the hood prop from the slot in the hood and return the prop to its retainer. Lower the hood 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm) above the vehicle and release it to latch fully. Check to make sure the hood is closed and repeat the procedure if necessary.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Compartment Overview

When you open the hood on the 2.9L engine (3.7L engine similar), you will see the following:



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

A. Windshield Washer Fluid. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 356*.
B. Engine Coolant Recovery Tank. See *Engine Coolant on page 345*.
C. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 338*.
D. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir (low in engine compartment). See *Power Steering Fluid on page 355*.
E. Automatic Transmission Fluid Dipstick (If Equipped). See “Checking the Fluid Level” under *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 339*.
F. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 333*.
G. Radiator Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System on page 350*.
H. Remote Negative (–) Terminal (GND). See *Jump Starting on page 362*.
I. Engine Oil Dipstick. See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 333*.
J. Remote Positive (+) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 362*.
K. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See “Brake Fluid” under *Brakes on page 357*.
L. Engine Compartment Fuse Block. See *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 435*.
M. Battery. See *Battery on page 361*.
N. Hydraulic Clutch Fluid Reservoir (If Equipped). See *Hydraulic Clutch on page 344*.

Engine Oil

Checking Engine Oil

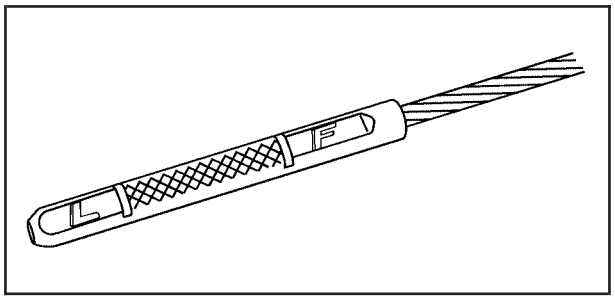
It is a good idea to check the engine oil every time you get fuel. In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

The engine oil dipstick handle is a yellow loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 332* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

1. Turn off the engine and give the oil several minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If you do not do this, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.
2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

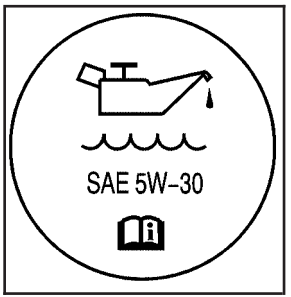
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When to Add Engine Oil



If the oil is below the cross-hatched area (L), you will need to add at least one quart/liter of oil. But you must use the right kind. This section explains what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 439*.

Notice: **Do not add too much oil. If the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged.**

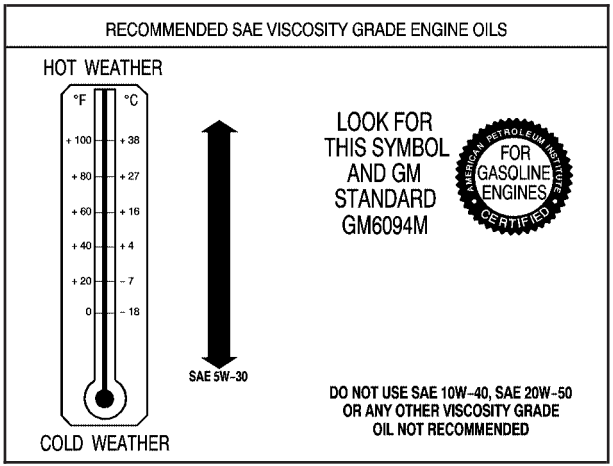


See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 332* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Be sure to add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when you are through.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

What Kind of Engine Oil to Use



Look or two things:

- GM6094M
  Your vehicle's engine requires oil meeting GM Standard GM6094M. You should look for and use only an oil that meets GM Standard GM6094M.
- SAE 5W-30
  As shown in the viscosity chart, SAE 5W-30 is best for your vehicle.

These numbers on an oil container show its viscosity, or thickness. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 20W-50.

Oils meeting these requirements should also have the starburst symbol on the container. This symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

You should look for this information on the oil container, and use only those oils that are identified as meeting GM Standard GM6094M and have the starburst symbol on the front of the oil container.

Notice: **Use only engine oil identified as meeting GM Standard GM6094M and showing the American Petroleum Institute Certified For Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. Failure to use the recommended oil can result in engine damage not covered by your warranty.**

GM Goodwrench® oil meets all the requirements for your vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If you are in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below –20°F (–29°C), it is recommended that you use either an SAE 5W-30 synthetic oil or an SAE 0W-30 oil. Both will provide easier cold starting and better protection for the engine at extremely low temperatures.

Engine Oil Additives

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the starburst symbol that meet GM Standard GM6094M are all you will need for good performance and engine protection.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

Your vehicle has a computer system that lets you know when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change will be indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, you must reset the system every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it will indicate that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE OIL message will come on. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 200*. Change your oil as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may not indicate that an oil change is necessary for over a year. However, your engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer has GM-trained people who will perform this work using genuine GM parts and reset the system. It is also important to check your oil regularly and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, you must change your oil at 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

The Engine Oil Life System calculates when to change your engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Anytime your oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required. If a situation occurs where you change your oil prior to a CHANGE OIL message being turned on, reset the system.

To reset the Engine Oil Life system, do the following:

1. With the engine off, turn the ignition to ON.
2. Press and release the stem in the lower center of the instrument cluster until the OIL LIFE message is displayed.
3. Once the alternating OIL LIFE and RESET messages appear, press and hold the stem until several beeps sound. This confirms that the oil life system has been reset.
4. Turn the key to LOCK.

If the CHANGE OIL message comes back on when you start your vehicle, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 200*.

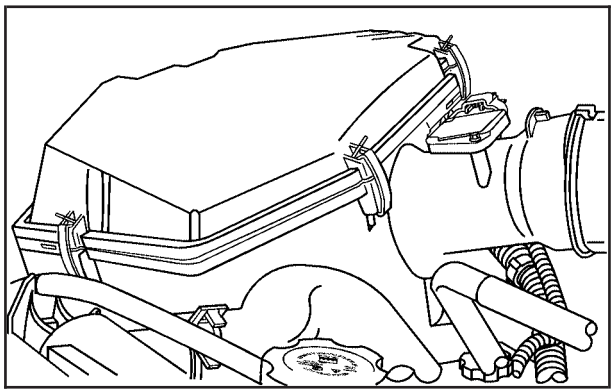
What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that may be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Instead, recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil. If you have a problem properly disposing of your used oil, ask your dealer, a service station, or a local recycling center for help.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter



The engine air cleaner/filter is located in the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 332* for more information on location.

When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

Inspect the air cleaner/filter at the Maintenance II intervals and replace it at the first oil change after each 50,000 mile (83 000 km) interval. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 445* for more information. If you are driving in dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

To inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter, do the following:

1. Unfasten the clips that hold the cover on and remove the cover.
2. Lift out the engine air cleaner/filter.
3. Inspect or replace the air filter. See *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 458* to determine which filter to use.
4. Reinstall the engine air cleaner/filter cover. Fasten the clips to hold the cover in place.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. If it is not there and the engine backfires, you could be burned. Do not drive with it off, and be careful working on the engine with the air cleaner/filter off.

Notice: **If the air cleaner/filter is off, a backfire can cause a damaging engine fire. And, dirt can easily get into your engine, which will damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you are driving.**

Automatic Transmission Fluid

When to Check and Change Automatic Transmission Fluid

A good time to check your automatic transmission fluid level is when the engine oil is changed.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Additional Required Services on page 448*, and be sure to use the transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455*.

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

Because this operation can be a little difficult, you may choose to have this done at the dealership service department.

If you do it yourself, be sure to follow all the instructions here, or you could get a false reading on the dipstick.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **Too much or too little fluid can damage your transmission. Too much can mean that some of the fluid could come out and fall on hot engine parts or exhaust system parts, starting a fire. Too little fluid could cause the transmission to overheat. Be sure to get an accurate reading if you check your transmission fluid.**

Wait at least 30 minutes before checking the transmission fluid level if you have been driving:

- When outside temperatures are above 90°F (32°C).
- At high speed for quite a while.
- In heavy traffic — especially in hot weather.
- While pulling a trailer.

To get the right reading, the fluid should be at normal operating temperature, which is 180°F to 200°F (82°C to 93°C).

Get the vehicle warmed up by driving about 15 miles (24 km) when outside temperatures are above 50°F (10°C). If it is colder than 50°F (10°C), drive the vehicle in THIRD (3) until the engine temperature gage moves and then remains steady for 10 minutes.

A cold fluid check can be made after the vehicle has been sitting for eight hours or more with the engine off, but this is used only as a reference. Let the engine run at idle for five minutes if outside temperatures are 50°F (10°C) or more. If it is colder than 50°F (10°C), you may have to idle the engine longer. Should the fluid level be low during this cold check, you must check the fluid hot before adding fluid. Checking the fluid hot will give you a more accurate reading of the fluid level.

Checking the Fluid Level

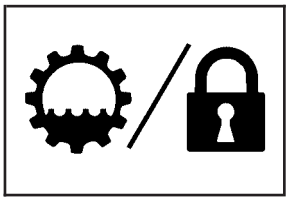
Prepare your vehicle as follows:

1. Park your vehicle on a level place. Keep the engine running.
2. With the parking brake applied, place the shift lever in PARK (P).
3. With your foot on the brake pedal, move the shift lever through each gear range, pausing for about three seconds in each range. Then, position the shift lever in PARK (P).
4. Let the engine run at idle for three minutes or more.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Then, without shutting off the engine, follow these steps:

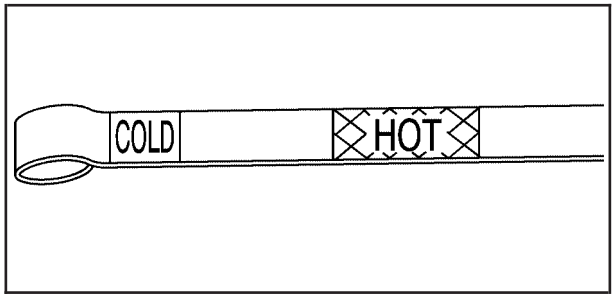
1. Flip the handle up and then pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag or paper towel.



The automatic transmission dipstick handle with this symbol on it is located in the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 332* for more information on location.

2. Push it back in all the way, wait three seconds and then pull it back out again.



3. Check both sides of the dipstick, and read the lower level. The fluid level must be in the COLD area, below the cross-hatched area, for a cold check or in the HOT or cross-hatched area for a hot check. Be sure to keep the dipstick pointed down to get an accurate reading.
4. If the fluid level is in the acceptable range, push the dipstick back in all the way; then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Add Automatic Transmission Fluid

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of transmission fluid to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455*.

Add fluid only after checking the transmission fluid while it is hot. A cold check is used only as a reference. If the fluid level is low, add only enough of the proper fluid to bring the level up to the HOT area for a hot check. It does not take much fluid, generally less than one pint (0.5 L). Do not overfill.

Notice: **Use of the incorrect automatic transmission fluid may damage your vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by your warranty. Always use the automatic transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455*.**

- After adding fluid, recheck the fluid level as described under “How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid,” earlier in this section.
- When the correct fluid level is obtained, push the dipstick back in all the way; then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

Manual Transmission Fluid

When to Check

A good time to have it checked is when the engine oil is changed. However, the fluid in your manual transmission does not require changing.

How to Check

Because this operation can be a little difficult, you may choose to have this done at your GM dealership service department.

If you do it yourself, be sure to follow all the instructions here, or you could get a false reading.

Notice: **Too much or too little fluid can damage your transmission. Too little fluid could cause the transmission to overheat. Be sure to get an accurate reading if you check your transmission fluid.**

Check the fluid level only when your engine is off, the vehicle is parked on a level place and the transmission is cool enough for you to rest your fingers on the transmission case.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Then, follow these steps:

1. Remove the filler plug.
2. Check that the lubricant level is up to the bottom of the filler plug hole.
3. If the fluid level is good, install the plug and be sure it is fully seated. If the fluid level is low, add more fluid as described in the next steps.

How to Add Fluid

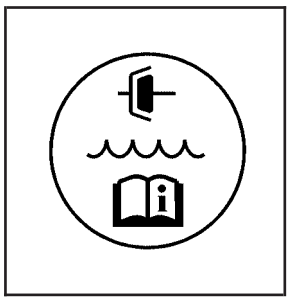
Here is how to add fluid. Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of fluid to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455*.

1. Remove the filler plug.
2. Add fluid at the filler plug hole. Add only enough fluid to bring the fluid level up to the bottom of the filler plug hole.
3. Install the filler plug. Be sure the plug is fully seated.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Hydraulic Clutch

The hydraulic clutch linkage in your vehicle is self-adjusting. The clutch master cylinder reservoir is filled with hydraulic clutch fluid.

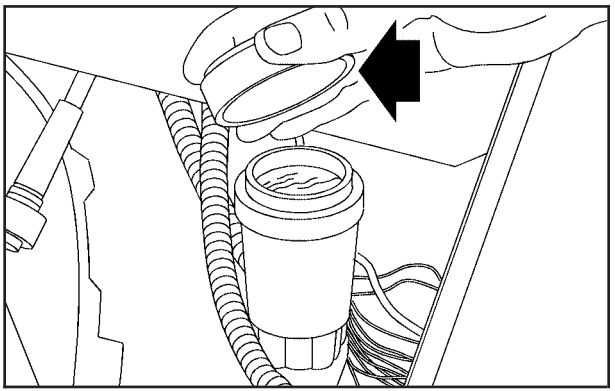


The hydraulic clutch fluid reservoir cap has this symbol on it. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 332* for reservoir location.

It is not necessary to regularly check clutch fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system. Adding fluid will not correct a leak.

A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

When to Check and What to Use



Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine how often you should check the fluid level in your clutch master cylinder reservoir and for the proper fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Check and Add Fluid

The proper fluid should be added if the level does not reach the bottom of the diaphragm when it is in place in the reservoir. See the instructions on the reservoir cap.

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in your vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL® engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in your vehicle for five years or 150,000 miles (240 000 km), whichever occurs first, if you add only DEX-COOL® extended life coolant.

The following explains your cooling system and how to add coolant when it is low. If you have a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 348*.

A 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant will:

- Give freezing protection down to –34°F (–37°C).
- Give boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).
- Protect against rust and corrosion.
- Help keep the proper engine temperature.
- Let the warning lights and gages work as they should.

Notice: **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® may cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant may require changing sooner, at the first maintenance service after each 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always use DEX-COOL® (silicate-free) coolant in your vehicle.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

What to Use

Use a mixture of one-half clean, drinkable water and one-half DEX-COOL® coolant which will not damage aluminum parts. If you use this coolant mixture, you do not need to add anything else.

⚠ CAUTION:

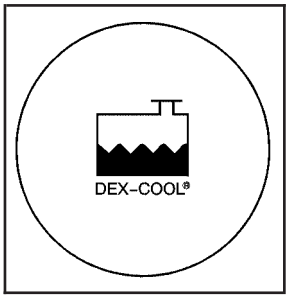
Adding only plain water to your cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. Your vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, your engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. Your engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and the proper coolant.

Notice: **If you use an improper coolant mixture, your engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost would not be covered by your warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts.**

Notice: **If you use extra inhibitors and/or additives in your vehicle's cooling system, you could damage your vehicle. Use only the proper mixture of the engine coolant listed in this manual for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455* for more information.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Checking Coolant



The coolant recovery tank cap has this symbol on it.

It is located toward the rear of the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 332* for more information on location.

The vehicle must be on a level surface. When your engine is cold, the coolant level should be at FULL COLD, or a little higher. When your engine is warm, the level could be above the FULL COLD level.

Adding Coolant

If you need more coolant, add the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture at the coolant recovery tank.

⚠ CAUTION:

Turning the radiator pressure cap when the engine and radiator are hot can allow steam and scalding liquids to blow out and burn you badly. With the coolant recovery tank, you will almost never have to add coolant at the radiator. Never turn the radiator pressure cap — even a little — when the engine and radiator are hot.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Add coolant mixture at the recovery tank, but be careful not to spill it.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol, and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

Occasionally check the coolant level in the radiator. For information on how to add coolant to the radiator, see *Cooling System on page 350*.

Radiator Pressure Cap

Notice: **If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.**

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 332* for more information on location.

Engine Overheating

A coolant temperature gage is on the instrument panel. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 189*.

The air conditioning might stop working if the engine is too hot. This is normal and helps cool the engine.

If Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Just turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.

CAUTION: (Continued)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION: (Continued)

If you keep driving when your engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop your engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

Notice: **If your engine catches fire because you keep driving with no coolant, your vehicle can be badly damaged. The costly repairs would not be covered by your warranty.**

If No Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

If you get an engine overheat warning but see or hear no steam, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when you:

- Climb a long hill on a hot day.
- Stop after high-speed driving.
- Idle for long periods in traffic.
- Tow a trailer. See “Driving on Grades” under *Towing a Trailer on page 305*.

If you get the overheat warning with no sign of steam, try this for a minute or so:

1. In heavy traffic, let the engine idle in NEUTRAL while stopped. If it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to PARK (P) or NEUTRAL and let the engine idle.
2. Turn off the air conditioning.
3. Turn on your heater to full hot at the highest fan speed and open the windows as necessary.

If you no longer have the overheat warning, you can drive. Just to be safe, drive slower for about 10 minutes. If the warning does not come back on, you can drive normally.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park your vehicle right away.

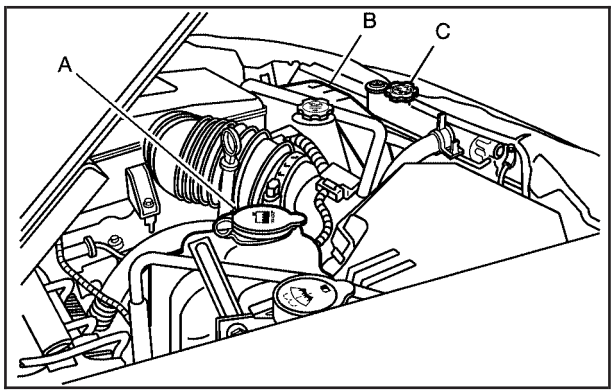
If there is still no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while you are parked. Push down the accelerator until the engine speed is about twice as fast as normal idle speed for at least three minutes while you are parked. If you still have the warning, turn off the engine and get everyone out of the vehicle until it cools down.

You may decide not to lift the hood but to get service help right away.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cooling System

When you decide it is safe to lift the hood, here is what you will see:

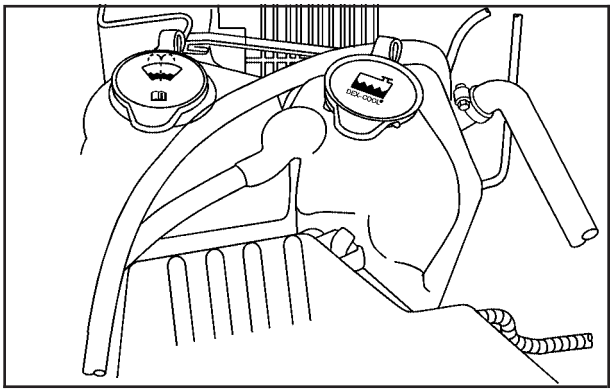


A. Coolant Recovery Tank

B. Engine Cooling Fan

C. Radiator Pressure Cap

If the coolant inside the coolant recovery tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. The vehicle should be parked on a level surface.



When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be at least up to the FULL COLD mark. If it is not, you may have a leak at the pressure cap or in the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator, water pump or somewhere else in the cooling system.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

If there seems to be no leak, start the engine again. The engine cooling fan speed should increase when idle speed is doubled by pushing the accelerator pedal down. If it does not, your vehicle needs service. Turn off the engine.

Notice: **Engine damage from running your engine without coolant is not covered by your warranty.**

Notice: **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® may cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant could require changing sooner, at 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always use DEX-COOL® (silicate-free) coolant in your vehicle.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Recovery Tank

If you have not found a problem yet, but the coolant level is not at the FULL COLD mark, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® engine coolant at the coolant recovery tank. See *Engine Coolant on page 345* for more information.

⚠ CAUTION:

Adding only plain water to your cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. Your vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, your engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. Your engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant.

Notice: **In cold weather, water can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core and other parts. Use the recommended coolant and the proper coolant mixture.**

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

When the coolant in the coolant recovery tank is at the FULL COLD mark, start your vehicle.

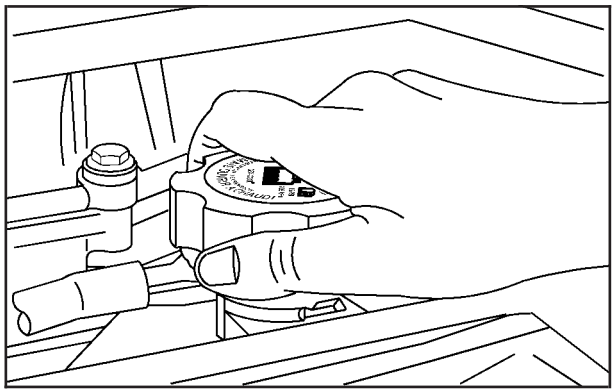
If the overheat warning continues, there is one more thing you can try. Add the proper mixture directly to the radiator, but be sure the cooling system is cool before you do it.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the radiator pressure cap — even a little — they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the radiator pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and radiator pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.

How to Add Coolant to the Radiator

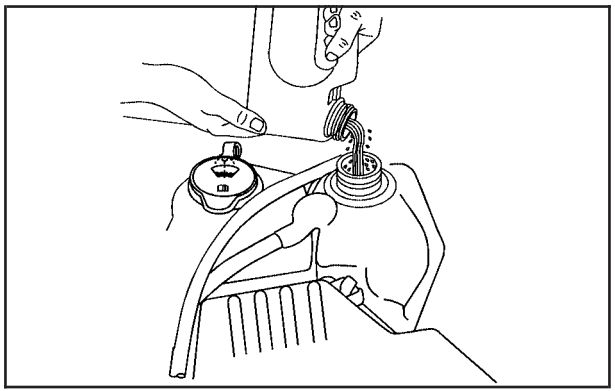


1. Remove the radiator pressure cap when the cooling system, including the upper radiator hose, is no longer hot. Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise about one full turn.

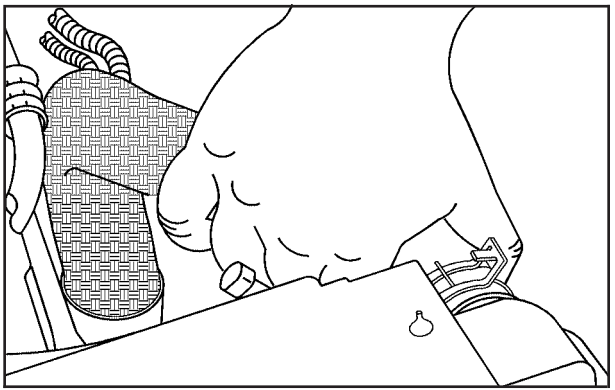
   If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.
2. Keep turning the cap to remove it.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Fill the radiator with the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture, up to the base of the filler neck. See *Engine Coolant on page 345* for more information about the proper coolant mixture.



4. Fill the coolant recovery tank to the FULL COLD mark.
5. Reinstall the cap on the coolant recovery tank, but leave the radiator pressure cap off.



6. Start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.
7. By this time, the coolant level inside the radiator filler neck might be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture through the filler neck until the level reaches the base of the filler neck.
8. Then replace the pressure cap. At any time during this procedure if coolant begins to flow out of the filler neck, reinstall the pressure cap. Be sure to secure it tightly.

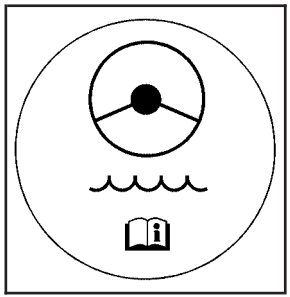
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Fan Noise

This vehicle has a clutched engine cooling fan. When the clutch is engaged, the fan spins faster to provide more air to cool the engine. In most everyday driving conditions, the clutch is not engaged. This improves fuel economy and reduces fan noise. Under heavy vehicle loading, trailer towing and/or high outside temperatures, the fan speed increases when the clutch engages. So you may hear an increase in fan noise. This is normal and should not be mistaken as the transmission slipping or making extra shifts. It is merely the cooling system functioning properly. The fan will slow down when additional cooling is not required and the clutch disengages.

You may also hear this fan noise when you start the engine. It will go away as the fan clutch disengages.

Power Steering Fluid



The power steering fluid reservoir is located near the front of the engine compartment, behind the radiator. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 332* for reservoir location.

When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Check Power Steering Fluid

1. Turn the key off and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
4. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
5. Then remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

The level should be between the ADD and FULL marks. If necessary, add only enough fluid to bring the level up to the proper range.

What to Use

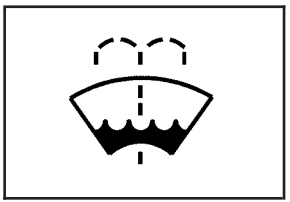
To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455*. Always use the proper fluid. Failure to use the proper fluid can cause leaks and damage hoses and seals.

Windshield Washer Fluid

What to Use

When you need windshield washer fluid, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If you will be operating your vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

Adding Washer Fluid



Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 332* for reservoir location.

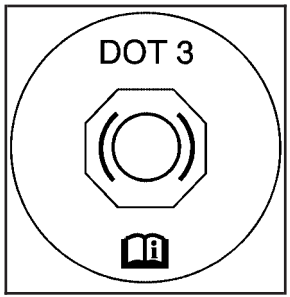
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice:

- **When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.**
- **Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage your washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water does not clean as well as washer fluid.**
- **Fill your washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.**
- **Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in your windshield washer. It can damage your washer system and paint.**

Brakes

Brake Fluid



The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT-3 brake fluid. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 332* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down. The first is that the brake fluid goes down to an acceptable level during normal brake lining wear. When new linings are put in, the fluid level goes back up. The other reason is that fluid is leaking out of the brake system. If it is, you should have the brake system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well, or will not work at all.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

So, it is not a good idea to top off the brake fluid. Adding brake fluid will not correct a leak. If you add fluid when your linings are worn, then you will have too much fluid when you get new brake linings. You should add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

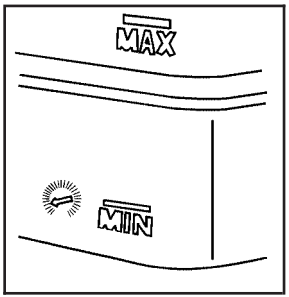
⚠ CAUTION:

If you have too much brake fluid, it can spill on the engine. The fluid will burn if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and your vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system. See "Checking Brake Fluid" in this section.

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine when to check your brake fluid. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 445*.

Checking Brake Fluid

You can check the brake fluid without taking off the cap.



Look at the brake fluid reservoir. The fluid level should be above MIN. If it is not have the brake system checked to see if there is a leak.

After work is done on the brake hydraulic system, make sure the level is above the MIN but not over the MAX mark.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

What to Add

When you do need brake fluid, use only DOT-3 brake fluid. Use new brake fluid from a sealed container only. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455*.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This will help keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

⚠ CAUTION:

With the wrong kind of fluid in the brake system, the brakes may not work well, or they may not even work at all. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.

Notice:

- **Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake system can damage brake system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.**
- **If you spill brake fluid on your vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on your vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately. See *Washing Your Vehicle on page 428*.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Brake Wear

Your vehicle has front disc brakes and rear drum brakes.

Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound may come and go or be heard all the time your vehicle is moving, except when you are pushing on the brake pedal firmly.

⚠ CAUTION:

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to an accident. When you hear the brake wear warning sound, have your vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.**

Some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to GM torque specifications.

Rear drum brakes do not have wear indicators, but if you ever hear a rear brake rubbing noise, have the rear brake linings inspected immediately. Also, the rear brake drums should be removed and inspected each time the tires are removed for rotation or changing. When you have the front brake pads replaced, have the rear brakes inspected, too.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign of brake trouble.

Brake Adjustment

Every time you make a brake stop, the brakes adjust for wear.

Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. Your vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality GM brake parts. When you replace parts of the braking system — for example, when the brake linings wear down and you need new ones put in — be sure you get new approved GM replacement parts.

If you do not, the brakes may no longer work properly. For example, if someone puts in brake linings that are wrong for your vehicle, the balance between the front and rear brakes can change — for the worse. The braking performance you have come to expect can change in many other ways if someone puts in the wrong replacement brake parts.

Battery

Your vehicle has a maintenance free battery. When it is time for a new battery, get one that has the replacement number shown on the original battery's label. We recommend an ACDelco® replacement battery. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 332* for battery location.

Warning: Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Storage

If you are not going to drive your vehicle for 25 days or more, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery. This will help keep your battery from running down.

⚠ CAUTION:

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting on page 362* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Jump Starting

If your vehicle's battery has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ CAUTION:

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- **They contain acid that can burn you.**
- **They contain gas that can explode or ignite.**
- **They contain enough electricity to burn you.**

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to your vehicle that would not be covered by your warranty.**

Trying to start your vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage your vehicle.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Notice: **If the other vehicle's system is not a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use vehicles with 12-volt systems with negative grounds to jump start your vehicle.**

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you do not want. You would not be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

   To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put an automatic transmission in PARK (P) or a manual transmission in NEUTRAL before setting the parking brake. If you have a four-wheel-drive vehicle, be sure the transfer case is not in NEUTRAL.

Notice: **If you leave your radio or other accessories on during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always turn off your radio and other accessories when jump starting your vehicle.**

3. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlets. Turn off the radio and all lamps that are not needed. This will avoid sparks and help save both batteries. And it could save the radio!

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Open the hoods and locate the positive (+) and negative (–) terminal locations on the other vehicle. Your vehicle has a remote positive (+) and a remote negative (–) jump starting terminal. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 332* for more information on the terminal locations.

⚠ CAUTION:

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

Be sure the batteries have enough water. You do not need to add water to the ACDelco® battery (or batteries) installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

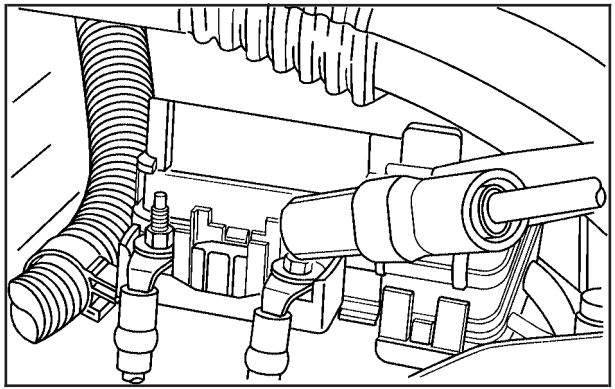
⚠ CAUTION:

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could be damaged too.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (–) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not connect positive (+) to negative (–) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts too. And do not connect the negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.



6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

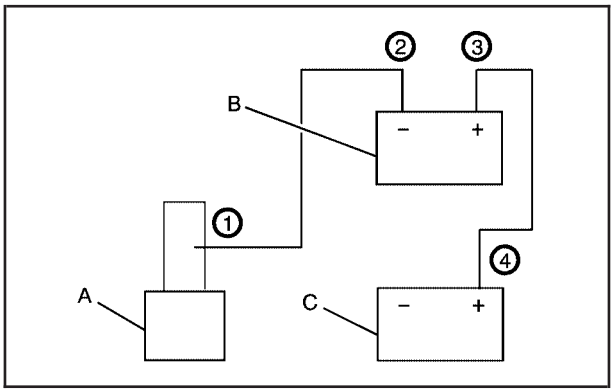
7. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
8. Now connect the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (–) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part, or to a remote negative (–) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.
9. Connect the other end of the negative (–) cable at least 18 inches (45 cm) away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move. The electrical connection is just as good there, and the chance of sparks getting back to the battery is much less.

   Your vehicle has a remote negative (–) terminal for this purpose.
10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.
11. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Notice: **If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



Jumper Cable Removal

A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part or Remote Negative (–) Terminal
B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) and Remote Negative (–) Terminals
C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal

To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles, do the following:

1. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle that had the dead battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.

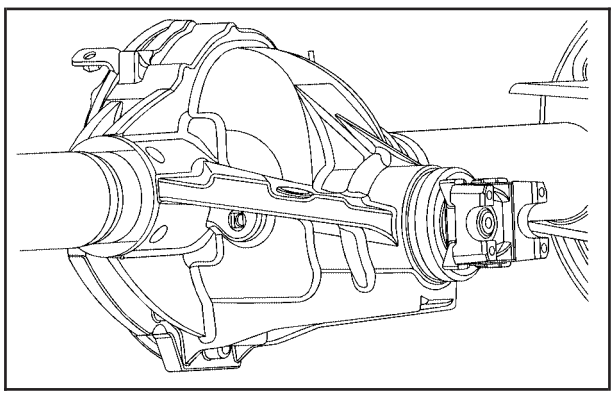
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Axle

When to Check and Change Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check rear axle fluid unless you suspect there is a leak or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

How to Check Lubricant



To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

The proper level is from 0 to 3/8 inch (0 mm to 10 mm) below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the rear axle.

What to Use

See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455* to determine which kind of lubricant to use.

Four-Wheel Drive

Lubricant checks in this section apply to this vehicle. There are two additional systems that need lubrication.

Transfer Case

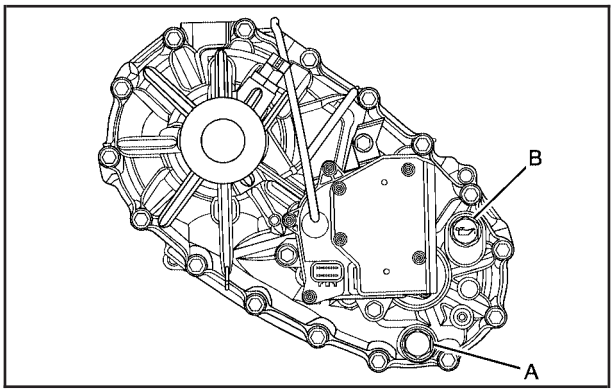
When to Check Lubricant

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine how often to check the lubricant. See *Additional Required Services on page 448*.

How to Check Lubricant

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



A. Drain Plug

B. Filler Plug

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the transfer case, you'll need to add some lubricant. Remove the plug and add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole. Use care not to overtighten the plug.

What to Use

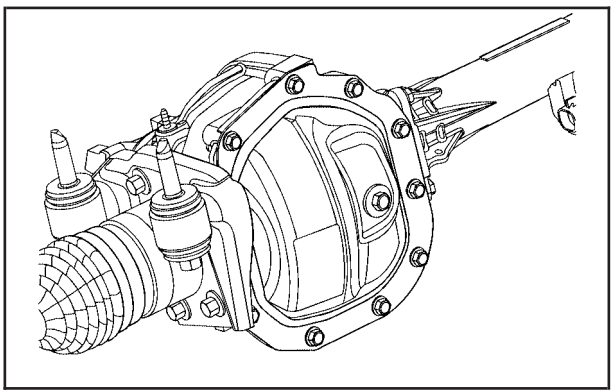
Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455*.

Front Axle

When to Check and Change Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check your front axle fluid unless you suspect there is a leak or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

How to Check Lubricant



To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the front axle, you may need to add some lubricant.

When the differential is cold, add enough lubricant to raise the level to 1/2 inch (12 mm) below the filler plug hole.

When the differential is at operating temperature (warm), add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole.

What to Use

See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455* to determine what kind of lubricant to use.

Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 374*.

For any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

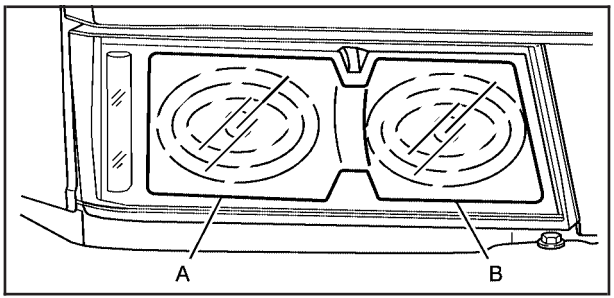
Halogen Bulbs

⚠ CAUTION:

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Headlamps

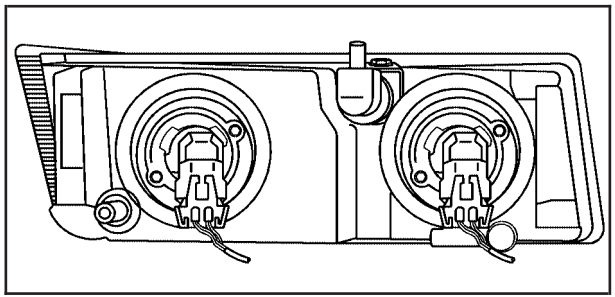


A. Low-Beam Headlamp/Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

B. High-Beam Headlamp

To replace one of these bulbs, do the following:

1. Open the hood. See *Hood Release on page 331* for more information.
2. Reach in and access the bulb sockets from inside the engine compartment.



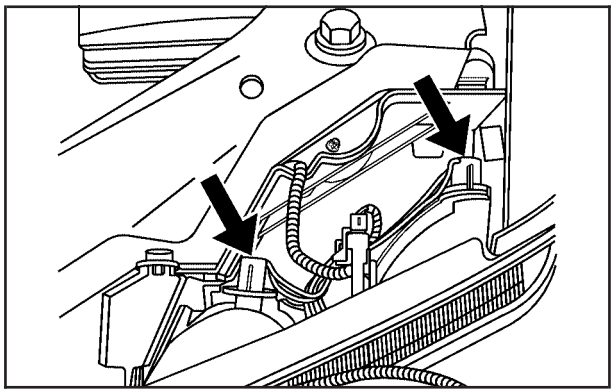
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the headlamp assembly and pull it straight out.
4. Unplug the electrical connector from the old bulb by releasing the clips on the bulb socket.
5. Replace with a new bulb socket.
6. Plug in the electrical connector to the new bulb socket.
7. Reinstall the new bulb socket into the headlamp assembly and turn it clockwise to secure.
8. Close the hood.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Front Turn Signal, Parking and Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

To replace one of these bulbs, do the following:

1. Open the hood. See *Hood Release on page 331* for more information.

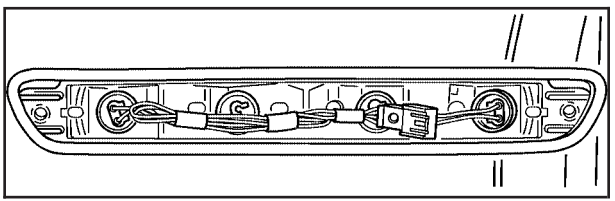


2. Reach in to access either one of the bulb sockets in the engine compartment.
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.
4. Holding the socket, pull the old bulb to release it from the bulb socket.
5. Push the new bulb into the socket until it clicks.
6. Insert the bulb socket into the lamp assembly and turn it clockwise to secure.
7. Close the hood.

Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)

To replace the CHMSL bulb, do the following:

1. Remove the two screws and lift off the lamp assembly from the vehicle.

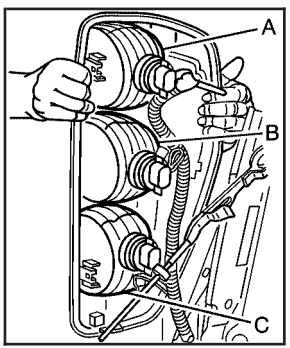


2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.
3. Holding the socket, pull the bulb to release it from the socket.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Push the new bulb into the socket until it clicks.
5. Insert the bulb socket into the lamp assembly and turn it clockwise to secure.
6. Reinstall the lamp assembly and tighten the screws.

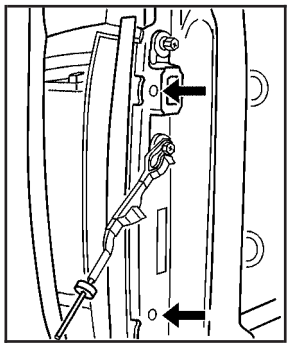
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps



A. Stoplamp/Taillamp
B. Turn Signal/Taillamp
C. Back-up Lamp

To replace one of these bulbs, do the following:

1. Open the tailgate. See *Tailgate on page 108* for more information.

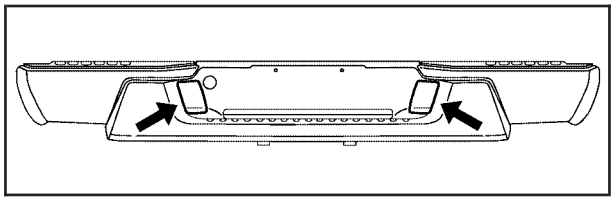


2. Remove the two rear lamp assembly screws near the tailgate latch.
3. Pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.
4. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the taillamp assembly.
5. Holding the socket, pull the old bulb to release it from the socket.
6. Push the new bulb into the socket until it clicks.
7. Insert the bulb socket into the taillamp assembly and turn it clockwise to secure.
8. Reinstall the taillamp assembly and tighten the screws.
9. Close the tailgate.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

License Plate Lamp

To replace one of these bulbs, do the following:



1. Reach under the rear bumper for the bulb socket.
2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and pull the bulb socket out of the connector.
3. Pull the old bulb straight out from the bulb socket.
4. Push the new bulb straight in until it clicks to secure it.
5. Reverse Steps 1 through 3 to reinstall the license plate lamp.

Replacement Bulbs

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)	912
License Plate Bulb	W5W
Headlamps	
High-beam	9005
Low-beam/Daytime Running Lamp (DRL)	9006
Parking/Front Turn Signal	3757KA
Parking Lamp (Inboard)	3157A
Stoplamp, Rear Turn Signal, Taillamp, and Back-up Lamp	3057

For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

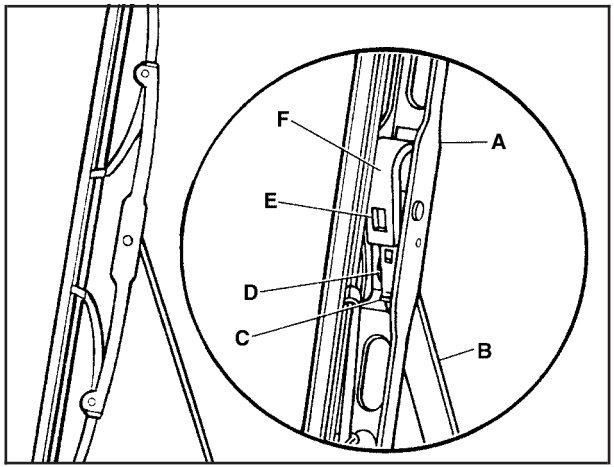
Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected for wear and cracking. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 445* for more information.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. For proper type and length, see *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 458*.

Allowing the wiper blade arm to touch the windshield when no wiper blade is installed could damage the windshield. Any damage that occurs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not allow the wiper blade arm to touch the windshield.

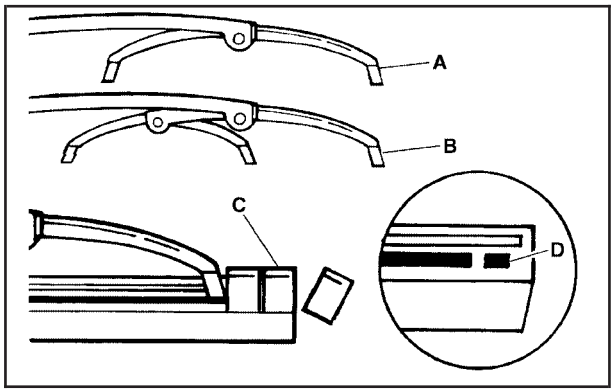
1. To remove the old wiper blades, lift the wiper arm until it locks into a vertical position.



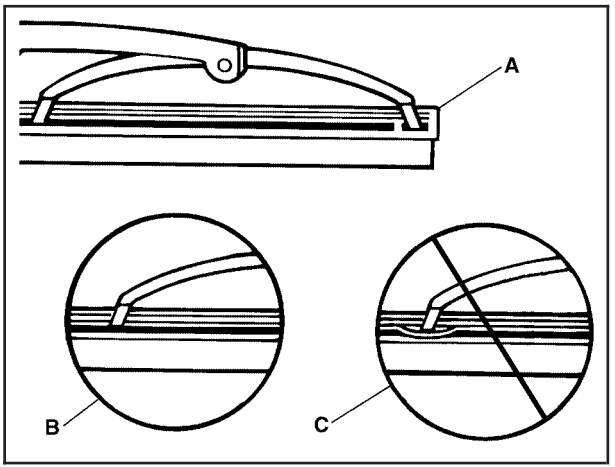
A. Blade Assembly
B. Arm Assembly
C. Locking Tab
D. Blade Pivot
E. Hook Slot
F. Arm Hook

2. Press down on the blade assembly pivot locking tab. Pull down on the blade assembly to release it from the wiper arm hook.
3. Remove the insert from the blade assembly. The insert has two notches at one end that are locked by bottom claws of the blade assembly. At the notched end, pull the insert from the blade assembly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



4. To install the new wiper insert, slide the insert (D), notched end last, into the end with two blade claws (A). Slide the insert all the way through the blade claws at the opposite end (B). The plastic caps (C) will be forced off as the insert is fully inserted.
5. Be sure that the notches are locked by the bottom claws. Make sure that all other claws are properly locked on both sides of the insert slots.



A. Claw in Notch
B. Correct Installation
C. Incorrect Installation

6. Put the blade assembly pivot in the wiper arm hook. Pull up until the pivot locking tab locks in the hook slot.
7. Carefully lower the wiper arm and blade assembly onto the windshield.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tires

Your new vehicle comes with high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. If you ever have questions about your tire warranty and where to obtain service, see your GM Warranty booklet for details. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer's booklet included with your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.

- **Overloading your vehicle's tires can cause overheating as a result of too much friction. You could have an air-out and a serious accident. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*.**
- **Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting accident could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure.**

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

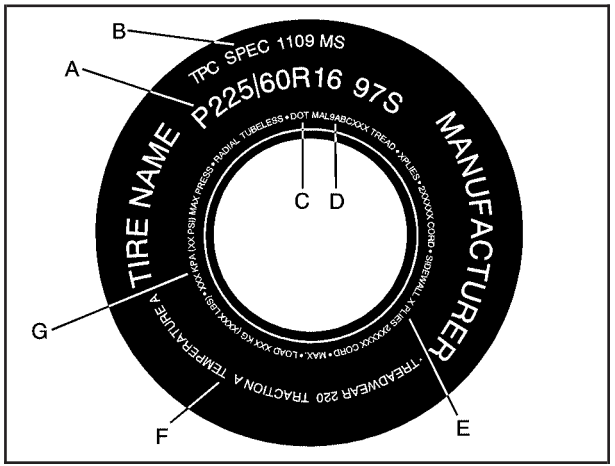
Tire pressure should be checked when your vehicle's tires are cold. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 385*.

- **Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when you hit a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.**
- **Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If the tire's tread is badly worn, or if your vehicle's tires have been damaged, replace them.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into its sidewall. The examples below show a typical passenger vehicle tire and a compact spare tire sidewall.



Passenger Vehicle Tire Example

(A) Tire Size: The tire size is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type and service description. See the "Tire Size" illustration later in this section for more detail.

(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

(C) DOT (Department of Transportation): The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

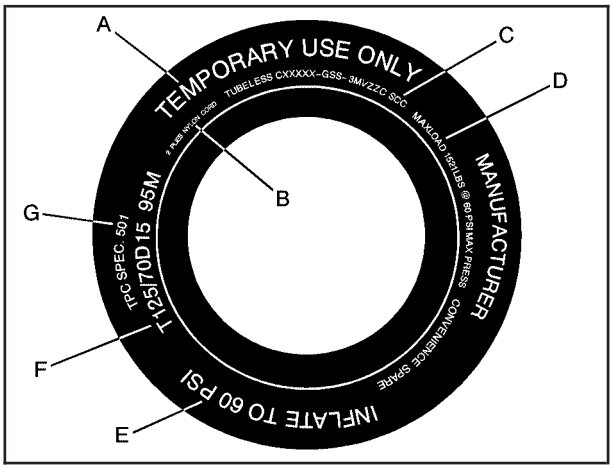
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(D) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following DOT code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(E) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(F) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction and temperature resistance. For more information see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 397*.

(G) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.



Compact Spare Tire Example

(A) Temporary Use Only: The compact spare tire or temporary use tire has a tread life of approximately 3,000 miles (5 000 km) and should not be driven at speeds over 65 mph (105 km/h). The compact spare tire is for emergency use when a regular road tire has lost air and gone flat. See “Compact Spare Tire” under *Spare Tire on page 422* for additional information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(B) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(C) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(D) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.

(E) Tire Inflation: The temporary use tire or compact spare tire should be inflated to 60 psi (420 kPa). For more information on tire pressure and inflation see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 385*.

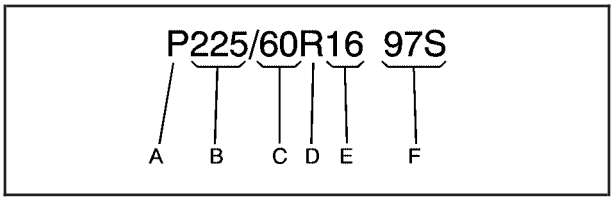
(F) Tire Size: A combination of letters and numbers define a tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type and service description. The letter T as the first character in the tire size means the tire is for temporary use only.

(G) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Size

The following illustration shows an example of a typical passenger vehicle tire size.



(A) P-Metric Tire: The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter P as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

(B) Tire Width: The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

(C) Aspect Ratio: A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 70, as shown in item C of the illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 70 percent as high as it is wide.

(D) Construction Code: A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

(E) Rim Diameter: Diameter of the wheel in inches.

(F) Service Description: These characters represent the load range and speed rating of the tire. The load index represents the load carry capacity a tire is certified to carry. The load index can range from 1 to 279. The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load. Speed ratings range from A to Z.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Terminology and Definitions

Air Pressure: The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascal (kPa).

Accessory Weight: This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transmission/transaxle, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

Aspect Ratio: The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

Belt: A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

Bead: The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

Bias Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Cold Tire Pressure: The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 385*.

Curb Weight: This means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

DOT Markings: A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) motor vehicle safety standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand, and date of production.

GVWR: Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*.

GAWR FRT: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

GAWR RR: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*.

Intended Outboard Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

Kilopascal (kPa): The metric unit for air pressure.

Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire: A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

Load Index: An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

Maximum Inflation Pressure: The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire may be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

Maximum Load Rating: The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight: The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, and production options weight.

Normal Occupant Weight: The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg). See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*.

Occupant Distribution: Designated seating positions.

Outward Facing Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

Recommended Inflation Pressure: Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 385* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Radial Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Rim: A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

Sidewall: The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

Speed Rating: An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

Traction: The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

Tread: The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Treadwear Indicators: Narrow bands, sometimes called wear bars, that show across the tread of a tire when only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 393*.

UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards): A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 397*.

Vehicle Capacity Weight: The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg) plus the rated cargo load. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*.

Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire: Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

Vehicle Placard: A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle's capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See "Tire and Loading Information Label" under *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Inflation - Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

Notice: **Do not let anyone tell you that under-inflation or over-inflation is all right. It is not. If your tires do not have enough air (under-inflation), you can get the following:**

- **Too much flexing**
- **Too much heat**
- **Tire overloading**
- **Premature or irregular wear**
- **Poor handling**
- **Reduced fuel economy**

If your tires have too much air (over-inflation), you can get the following:

- **Unusual wear**
- **Poor handling**
- **Rough ride**
- **Needless damage from road hazards**

A Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar), below the driver's door latch. This label shows your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressures for your tires when they are cold. The recommended cold tire inflation pressure, shown on the label, is the minimum amount of air pressure needed to support your vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity.

For additional information regarding how much weight your vehicle can carry, and an example of the Tire and Loading Information label, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*. How you load your vehicle affects vehicle handling and ride comfort, never load your vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

When to Check

Check your tires once a month or more. Also check the tire pressure of the spare tire. If you have a compact spare tire, it should be at 60 psi (420 kPa). See *Spare Tire on page 422* for additional information.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gage to check tire pressure. You cannot tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they are underinflated. Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. Cold means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the inflation pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gage.

Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

Tire Pressure Monitor System

Your vehicle has a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). This system uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel assembly on your vehicle, except the spare tire. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your vehicle's tires and transmit the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

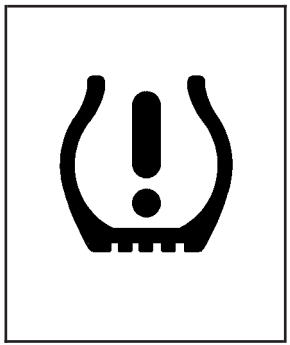
When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS will illuminate the low tire pressure warning light located in the instrument panel cluster, and at the same time display the LOW TIRE warning message on the Driver Information Center (DIC). The low tire pressure warning light and the LOW TIRE warning message appear at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *DIC Controls and Displays on page 196* and *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 200*.

You may notice, during cooler weather conditions, that the low tire pressure warning light and the DIC LOW TIRE message may come on when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as you start to drive. This may be an early indicator that the air pressure in the tire(s) is getting low and needs to be inflated to the proper pressure.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)



As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

A Tire and Loading Information label, attached to your vehicle, shows the size of your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for your vehicle's tires when they are cold. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location on your vehicle. Also see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 385* for additional information.

Your vehicle's TPMS can warn you about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 391*, *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 393*, and *Tires on page 377*.

Notice: **Do not use a tire sealant if your vehicle has Tire Pressure Monitors. The liquid sealant can damage the tire pressure monitor sensors.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

TPMS Sensor Identification Codes

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. Any time you replace one or more of the TPMS sensors or rotate your vehicle's tires, the identification codes will need to be matched to the new tire/wheel position. The sensors are matched to the tire/wheel positions in the following order: driver's side front tire, passenger's side front tire, passenger's side rear tire, and driver's side rear tire using a TPMS diagnostic tool. See your dealer for service.

The TPMS sensors may also be matched to each tire/wheel position by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure. If increasing the tire's air pressure, do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure indicated on the tire's sidewall.

You will have one minute to match the first tire/wheel position, and five minutes overall, to match all four tire/wheel positions. If it takes longer than one minute, to match the first tire and wheel, or more than five minutes to match all four tire and wheel positions the matching process stops and you will need to start over.

The TPMS sensor matching procedure is outlined below:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition switch to ON with the engine off.
3. Turn the exterior lamp switch from AUTO to OFF four times within three seconds. A double horn chirp will sound and the TPMS low tire warning light starts flashing. The double horn chirp and flashing TPMS warning light indicates the TPMS matching process has started. The TPMS warning light should continue flashing throughout the matching procedure. The LOW TIRE message displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC).
4. Start with the driver's side front tire.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Remove the valve cap from the valve cap stem. Activate the TPMS sensor by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure for 10 seconds, then stop and listen for a single horn chirp. The single horn chirp should sound within 15 seconds, confirming that the sensor identification code has been matched to this tire and wheel position. If you do not hear the confirming single horn chirp, turn the ignition switch to LOCK and start over beginning with Step 2. To let air-pressure out of a tire you can use the pointed end of the valve cap, a pencil-style air pressure gage, or a key.
6. Proceed to the passenger's side front tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
7. Proceed to the passenger's side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
8. Proceed to the driver's side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
9. After hearing the confirming horn chirp for the driver side rear tire, check to see if the TPMS low tire warning light and the DIC LOW TIRE messages have turned off. If yes, the TPMS sensors have been relearned. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK.

   If the low tire warning light and the DIC SERV TPM messages are on after completing Step 5 for the driver side rear tire, the sensor relearn process has not been successful. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK and repeat the matching process beginning with Step 2.
10. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information label.
11. Put the valve caps back on the valve stems.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Industry and Science Canada

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) operates on a radio frequency and complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) operates on a radio frequency and complies with RSS-210 of Industry and Science Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Tire Inspection and Rotation

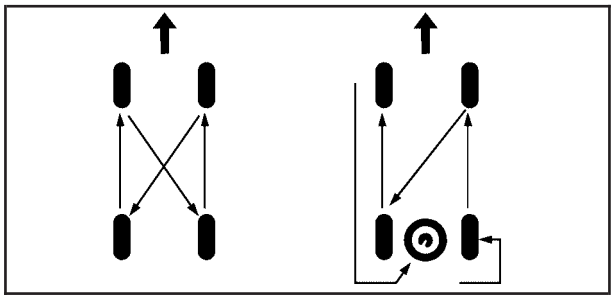
Tires should be rotated every 5,000 to 8,000 miles (8 000 to 13 000 km).

Any time you notice unusual wear, rotate your tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 393* and *Wheel Replacement on page 398* for more information.

Make sure the spare tire is stored securely. Push, pull, and then try to rotate or turn the tire. If it moves, use the wheel wrench to tighten the cable. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 402*.

The purpose of regular rotation is to achieve more uniform wear for all tires on the vehicle. The first rotation is the most important, see *Scheduled Maintenance on page 445*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



When rotating your tires, always use one of the correct rotation patterns shown here.

If your vehicle has a compact spare tire or a spare tire that does not match your vehicle's road tires and wheels, in size and type, do not include the spare in the tire rotation.

After the tires have been rotated, adjust the front and rear inflation pressures as shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. For the location of the Tire and Loading Information label see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*. Make certain that all wheel nuts are properly tightened, see "Wheel Nut Torque" under *Capacities and Specifications on page 439* for the proper wheel nut torque specification.

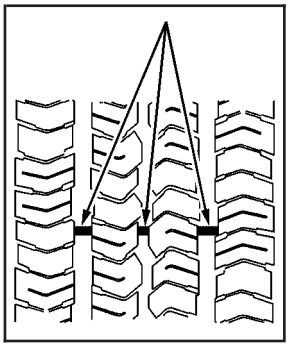
⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 402*.

Any time you rotate the vehicle's tires the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) will need to be reset. The TPMS identification codes will need to be matched to the tire and wheel position. See "TPMS Sensor Identification Codes" under *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 386*.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

When It Is Time for New Tires



One way to tell when it is time for new tires is to check the treadwear indicators, which will appear when your tires have only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or less of tread remaining. Some commercial truck tires may not have treadwear indicators.

You need a new tire if any of the following statements are true:

- You can see the indicators at three or more places around the tire.
- You can see cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for your vehicle. The original equipment tires installed on your vehicle, when it was new, were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC spec) system rating. If you need replacement tires, GM strongly recommends that you get tires with the same TPC Spec rating. This way, your vehicle will continue to have tires that are designed to give the same performance and vehicle safety, during normal use, as the original tires.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of your vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall by the tire manufacturer.

If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC spec number will be followed by an MS for mud and snow. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling on page 378* for additional information.

⚠ CAUTION:

Mixing tires could cause you to lose control of your vehicle while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes, brands, or types (radial and bias-belted tires), the vehicle may not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tires of different sizes, brands, or types may also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the correct size, brand, and type of tires on all wheels.

CAUTION: (Continued)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION: (Continued)

Your vehicle may have a compact spare tire and wheel assembly. If the vehicle has a compact spare tire and wheel, they have the same overall diameter as your vehicle's full-size tires and wheels. Because they were designed and developed for use on your vehicle, it is all right to drive your vehicle with the compact spare installed properly. Compact spare tires are designed for temporary use only. See *Spare Tire on page 422*.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you use bias-ply tires on your vehicle, the wheel rim flanges could develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on your vehicle.

If you must replace your vehicle's tires with those that do not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction type (radial and bias-belted tires) as your vehicle's original tires.

Your vehicle's original equipment tires are listed on the Tire and Loading Information Label. This label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*, for more information about the Tire and Loading Information Label and its location on your vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Different Size Tires and Wheels

If you add wheels or tires that are a different size than your original equipment wheels and tires, this may affect the way your vehicle performs, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover. Additionally, if your vehicle has electronic systems such as, anti-lock brakes, traction control, and electronic stability control, the performance of these systems can be affected.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you add different sized wheels, your vehicle may not provide an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. You may increase the chance that you will crash and suffer serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems developed for your vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See *Buying New Tires on page 394* and *Accessories and Modifications on page 323* for additional information.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance. This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States. The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver, or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1.5) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction – AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing will not be necessary on a regular basis. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling to one side or the other, the alignment may need to be checked. If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your tires and wheels may need to be rebalanced. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it (except some aluminum wheels, which can sometimes be repaired). See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel you need.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

If you need to replace any of your wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts, replace them only with new GM original equipment parts. This way, you will be sure to have the right wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts on your vehicle can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of your vehicle, make your tires lose air and make you lose control. You could have a collision in which you or others could be injured. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

Notice: **The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.**

See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 402* for more information.

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ CAUTION:

Putting a used wheel on your vehicle is dangerous. You cannot know how it has been used or how far it has been driven. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. If you have to replace a wheel, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Chains

⚠ CAUTION:

If your vehicle has P225/75R15, P265/75R15, P235/75R15, or P235/50R18 size tires, do not use tire chains. They can damage your vehicle because there is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and you or others may be injured in a crash. Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for use on your vehicle and tire size combination and road conditions.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To help avoid damage to your vehicle, drive slowly, readjust, or remove the device if it is contacting your vehicle. Do not spin the vehicle's wheels. If you do find traction devices that will fit, install them on the rear tires.

Notice: **If your vehicle has a tire size other than P225/75R15, P265/75R15, P235/75R15 or P235/50R18 use tire chains only where legal and only when you must. Use chains that are the proper size for your tires. Install them on the tires of the rear axle. Do not use chains on the tires of the front axle. Tighten them as tightly as possible with the ends securely fastened. Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions. If you can hear the chains contacting your vehicle, stop and retighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage your vehicle.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If a Tire Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tire to blowout while you are driving, especially if you maintain your vehicle's tires properly. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if you should ever have a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire will create a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop well out of the traffic lane.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction you would use in a skid. In any rear blowout remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Get the vehicle under control by steering the way you want the vehicle to go. It may be very bumpy and noisy, but you can still steer. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road if possible.

⚠ CAUTION:

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. The jack provided with your vehicle is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. Use the jack provided with your vehicle only for changing a flat tire.

If a tire goes flat, the next part shows how to use the jacking equipment to change a flat tire safely.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on your hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 160* for more information.

⚠ CAUTION:

Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall on you or other people. You and they could be badly injured or even killed. Find a level place to change your tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. **Set the parking brake firmly.**
2. **Put an automatic transmission shift lever in PARK (P), or shift a manual transmission to FIRST (1) or REVERSE (R).**

CAUTION: (Continued)

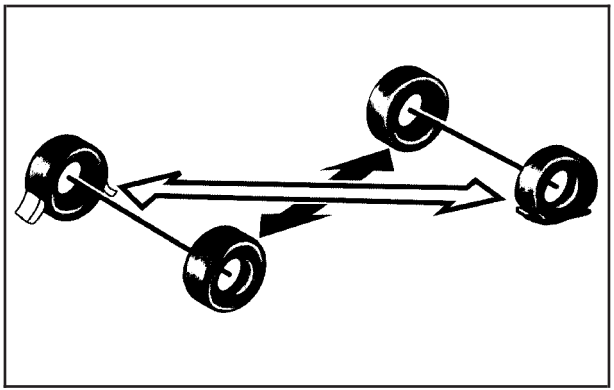
CAUTION: (Continued)

3. **If you have a four-wheel-drive vehicle, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear — not in NEUTRAL.**
4. **Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.**
5. **Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.**

To be even more certain the vehicle will not move, put blocks at the front and rear of the tire farthest away from the one being changed. That would be the tire on the other side, at the opposite end of the vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

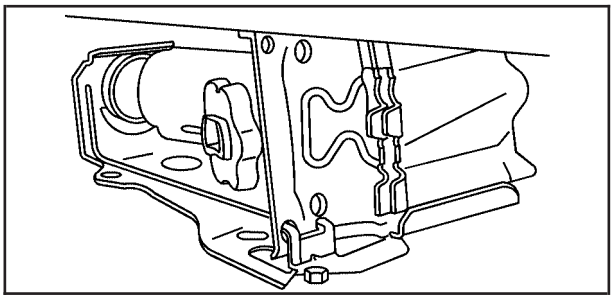
When your vehicle has a flat tire, use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of the wheel blocks.



The following information will tell you next how to use the jack and change a tire.

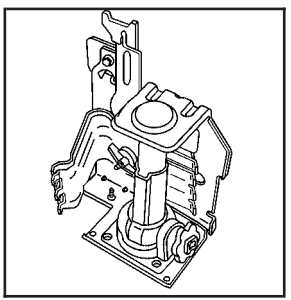
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools

The tools you will need are located under the passenger's seat.



Crew Cab

For crew cab models, the jack and wheel blocks are located under the driver's side rear seat.

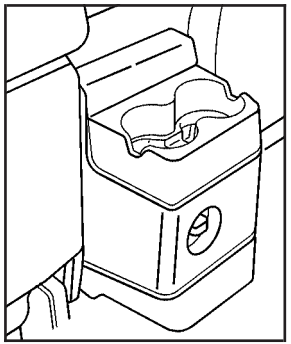


Regular/Extended Cab

For regular and extended cab vehicles, the jack and wheel blocks are located under the cover at the center of the vehicle behind the front seats.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To access the tools, do the following:



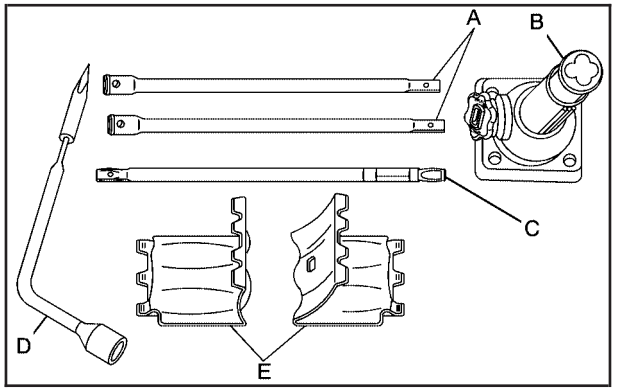
Extended/Regular Cab

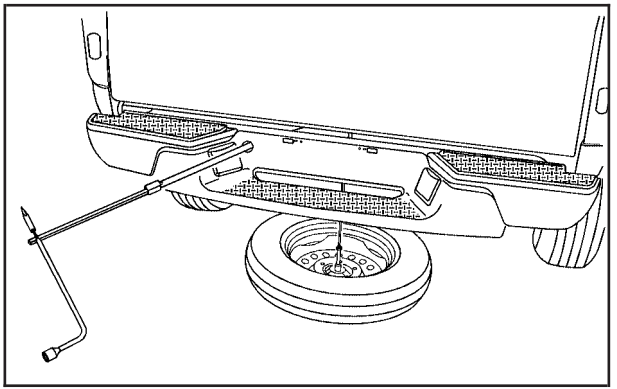
1. Move the seats forward to access the cover.
2. Turn the wing nut on the cover counterclockwise to remove it.

   For crew cab models, reach under the rear seat to access the jack and wheel blocks. To reinstall the jack and wheel block assembly in the mounting bracket, insert the tabs into the jack base by pushing the blocks up into the assembly. The outer hole in the jack base aligns with the tab on the bracket. When reinstalling, make sure the jack is secure, but do not overtighten the jack in the bracket.
3. Remove the wheel blocks and the wheel block retainer by turning the wing nut counterclockwise.
4. Put the wheel blocks at the front and rear of the tire farthest away from the one being changed. That would be the tire on the other side, at the opposite end of the vehicle.
5. Locate the wing nut used to retain the storage bag and tools which is under the front passenger's seat. Remove it by turning the wing nut counterclockwise.

You will use the jack handle extensions and the wheel wrench to remove the underbody-mounted spare tire.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS





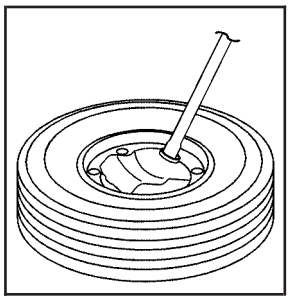
A. Jack Handle Extensions
B. Jack
C. Extension Tool
D. Wheel Wrench
E. Wheel Blocks

1. Assemble the wheel wrench (D) and the jack handle extensions (A).
2. Insert the hoist end (chiseled end) of the extension tool (C) through the hole in the rear bumper and into the funnel-shaped guide. The chiseled end of the extension is used to lower the spare tire.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Turn the wheel wrench (D) counterclockwise to lower the spare tire to the ground. Continue to turn the wheel wrench until the spare tire can be pulled out from under the vehicle.

   If the spare tire does not lower to the ground, the secondary latch is engaged causing the tire not to lower. See *Secondary Latch System on page 414*.

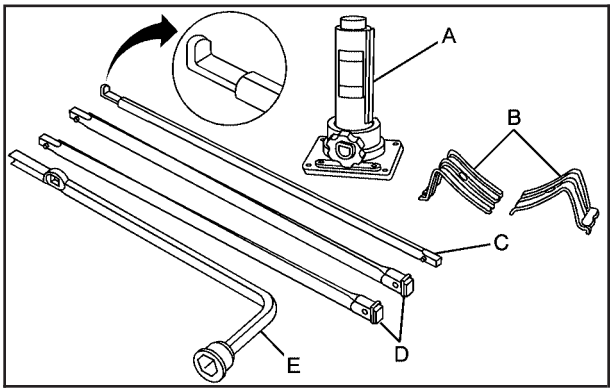


4. Tilt the retainer when the tire has been lowered, and slide it up the cable so it can be pulled up through the wheel opening.

5. Put the spare tire near the flat tire.

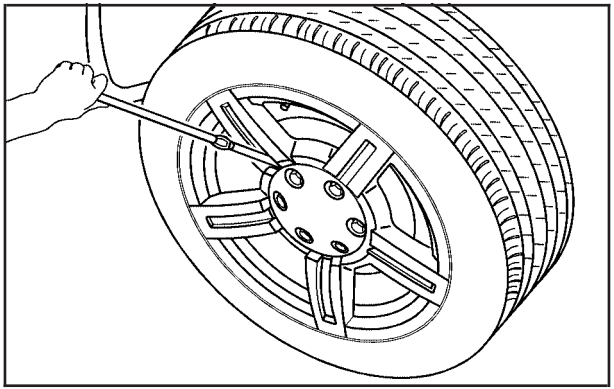
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

Use the following pictures and instructions as a guide in removing the flat tire and raising the vehicle.



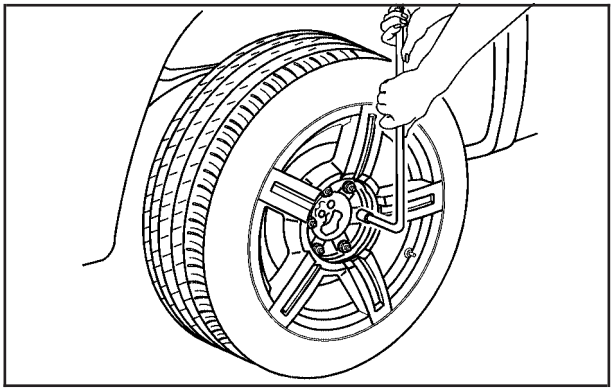
The tools you will be using include the jack (A), the wheel blocks (B), the extension tool (C), the jack handle extensions (D), and the wheel wrench (E).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



1. Remove the center cap by placing the chisel end of the wheel wrench (E) into one of the slots on the wheel and gently prying the cap out.

   If your vehicle has the Xtreme package, remove each wheel nut cap with the wheel wrench and remove the center cap by hand.



2. Use the wheel wrench to loosen all the wheel nuts by turning it counterclockwise. Do not remove the wheel nuts yet.

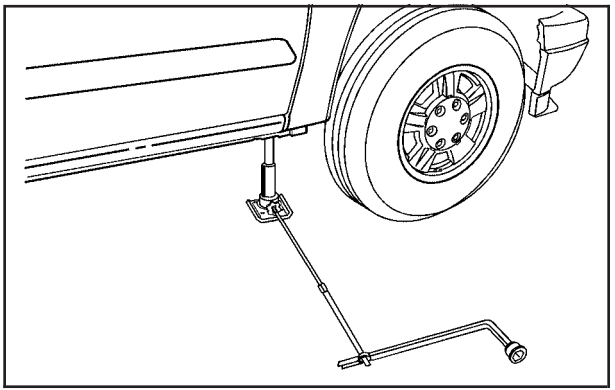
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

⚠ CAUTION:

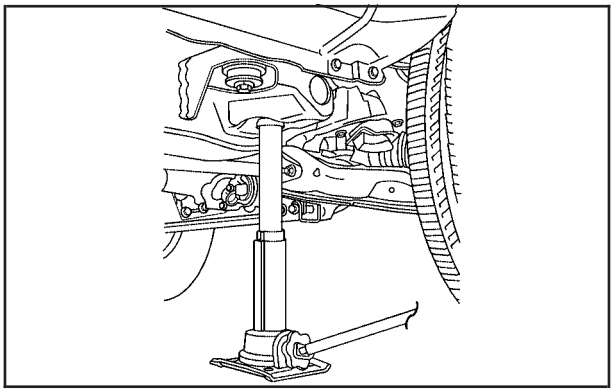
Raising your vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.



Front Position

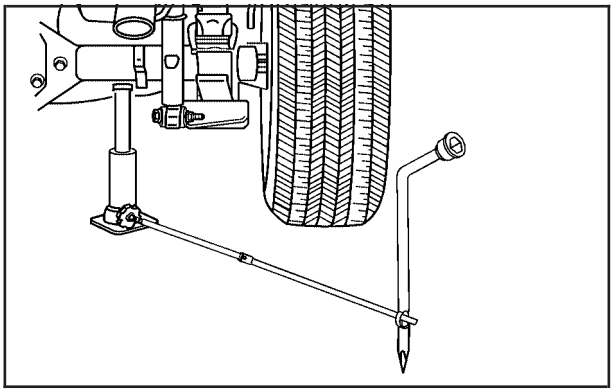
3. Position the jack (A) under the vehicle as shown for the front or rear locations.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



Front Position

If the flat tire is on the front of the vehicle, position the jack to the rear of the front tire in the pocket off of the frame.

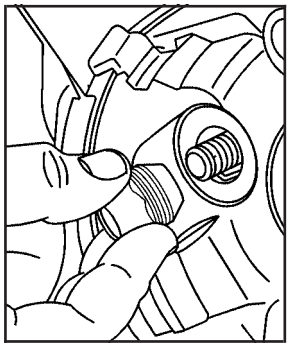


Rear Position

If the flat tire is on the rear, position the jack under the rear axle and get as close as possible to the shock absorber.

4. Make sure the jack head is positioned so that the rear axle is resting securely between the grooves that are on the jack head.
5. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the spare tire to fit under the wheel well.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



6. Remove all the wheel nuts and take off the flat tire.

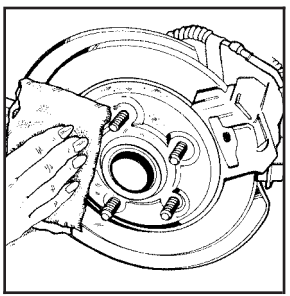
⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on the wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make the wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from the places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off.



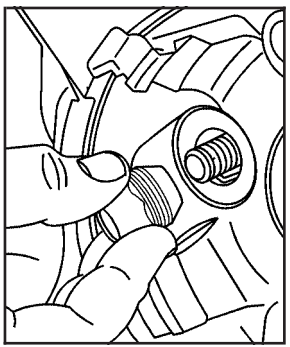
7. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.

8. Install the spare tire.

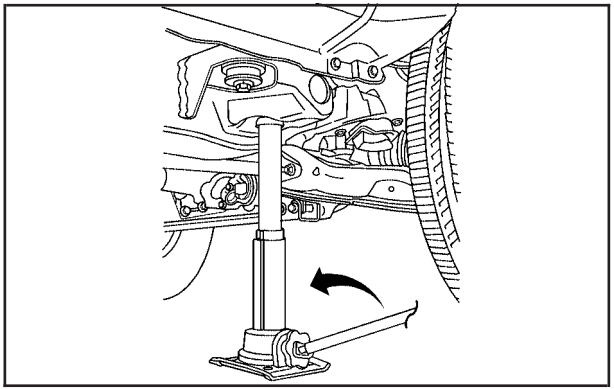
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts. If you do, the nuts might come loose. Your wheel could fall off, causing a serious accident.

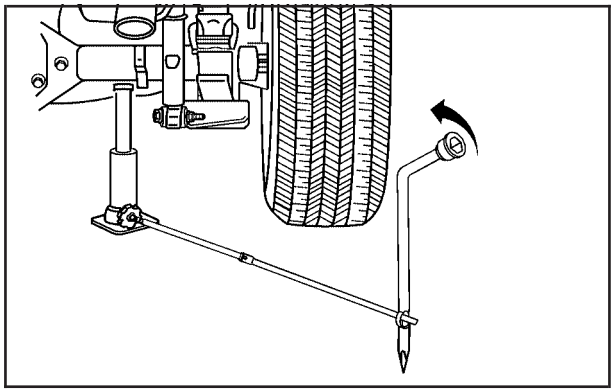


9. Put the wheel nuts back on with the rounded end of the nuts toward the wheel. Tighten each wheel nut by hand. Then use the wheel wrench to tighten the nuts until the wheel is held against the hub.



Front Position

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



Rear Position

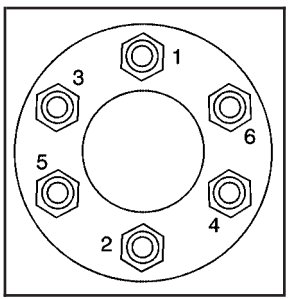
10. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the vehicle. Lower the jack completely.

⚠ CAUTION:

Incorrect wheel nuts or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to come loose and even come off. This could lead to an accident. Be sure to use the correct wheel nuts. If you have to replace them, be sure to get new GM original equipment wheel nuts. Stop somewhere as soon as you can and have the nuts tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 439* for wheel nut torque specification.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 439* for the wheel nut torque specification.**



11. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence as shown by turning the wheel wrench clockwise.

When you reinstall the regular wheel and tire, you must also reinstall the center cap. Place the cap on the wheel and tap it into place until it seats flush with the wheel. The cap only goes on one way. Be sure to line up the tab on the center cap with the indentation on the wheel.

For the Xtreme, tighten each nut cap by hand, then tighten an additional one quarter of a turn with the wheel wrench.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

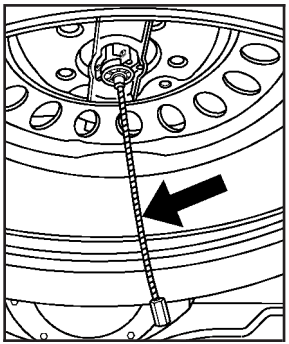
Secondary Latch System

Your vehicle has an underbody-mounted tire hoist assembly that has a secondary latch system. It is designed to stop the spare tire from suddenly falling off your vehicle. For the secondary latch to work, the spare must be installed with the valve stem pointing down. See *Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools on page 418*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Before beginning this procedure read all the instructions. Failure to read and follow the instructions could damage the hoist assembly and you and others could get hurt. Read and follow the instructions listed next.

To release the spare tire from the secondary latch, do the following:



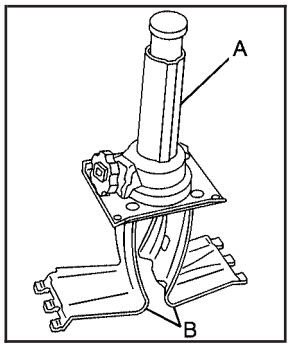
1. Check under the vehicle to see if the cable end fitting is visible.

2. If the cable end fitting is not visible, proceed to Step 6.

   If it is visible, first try to tighten the cable by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. You cannot overtighten the cable.

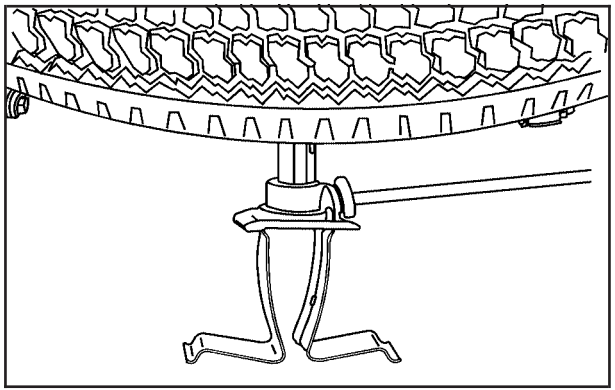
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

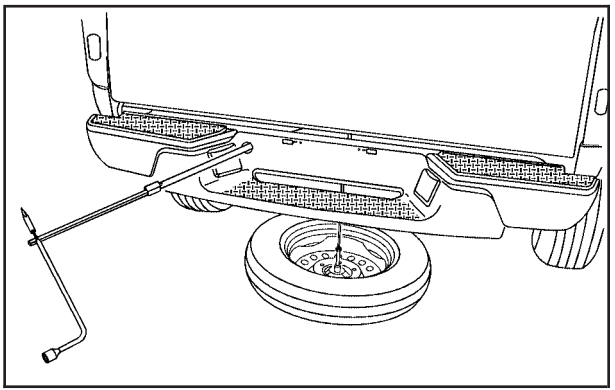
3. Loosen the cable by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise three or four turns.
4. Repeat this procedure at least two times. If the spare tire lowers to the ground, continue with Step 5 under *Removing the Spare Tire and Tools on page 403*.
5. Turn the wrench counterclockwise until approximately 6 inches (15 cm) of cable is exposed.
6. Stand the wheel blocks on their shortest ends, with the backs facing each other.



7. Place the bottom edge of the jack (A) on the wheel blocks (B), separating them so that the jack is balanced securely.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS





8. Attach the jack handle, extension, and wheel wrench to the jack and place it (with the wheel blocks) under the vehicle towards the front of the rear bumper. Position the center lift point of the jack under the wheel.
9. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the jack until it lifts the tire.
10. Continue raising the jack until the tire stops moving upward and is held firmly in place, the secondary latch has released, and the tire is balancing on the jack.
11. Remove the jack handle and insert the hoist end of the extension through the hole in the rear bumper.

    Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise one turn or until the wheel retainer assembly is disengaged.
12. Reinsert the jack handle into the jack. Lower the jack by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise. Keep lowering the jack until the spare tire slides off the jack or is hanging by the cable.

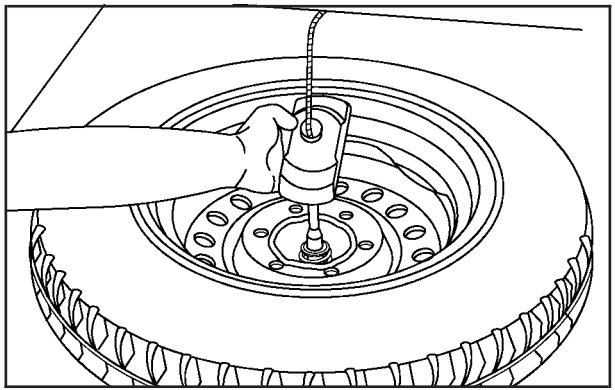
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION:

Someone standing too close during the procedure could be injured by the jack. If the spare tire does not slide off the jack completely, make sure no one is behind you or on either side of you as you pull the jack out from the under spare.

13. Disconnect the jack handle from the jack and carefully remove the jack. Use one hand to push against the spare while firmly pulling the jack out from under the spare tire with the other hand.

    If the spare tire is hanging from the cable, insert the hoist end of the extension into the hoist shaft hole in the bumper and turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare the rest of the way.



14. Tilt the tire retainer at the end of the cable and pull it through the wheel opening. Pull the tire out from under the vehicle.
15. If the cable is hanging under the vehicle, turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the cable.

    Have the hoist assembly inspected as soon as you can. You will not be able to store a spare or flat tire using the hoist assembly until it has been replaced.

To continue changing the flat tire, see *Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire on page 406*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools

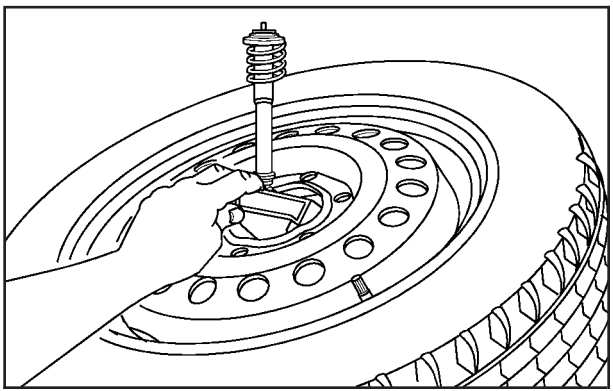
⚠ CAUTION:

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

Notice: **Storing an aluminum wheel with a flat tire under your vehicle for an extended period of time or with the valve stem pointing up may damage the wheel. Always stow the wheel with the valve stem pointing down and have the wheel/tire repaired as soon as possible.**

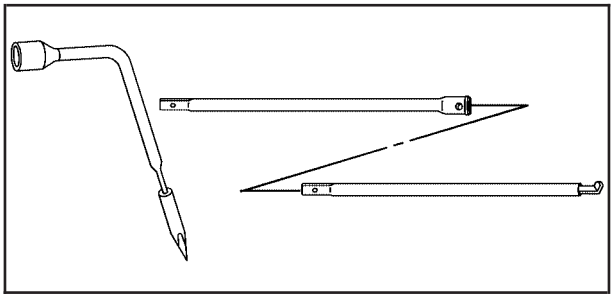
Store the tire under the rear of the vehicle in the spare tire carrier. Use the following art and text to help you.

1. Put the tire on the ground at the rear of the vehicle with the valve stem pointed down.

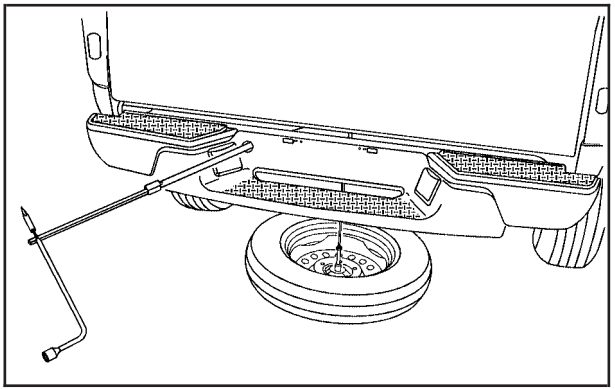


2. Tilt the retainer downward and through the wheel opening. Make sure the retainer is fully seated across the underside of the wheel.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

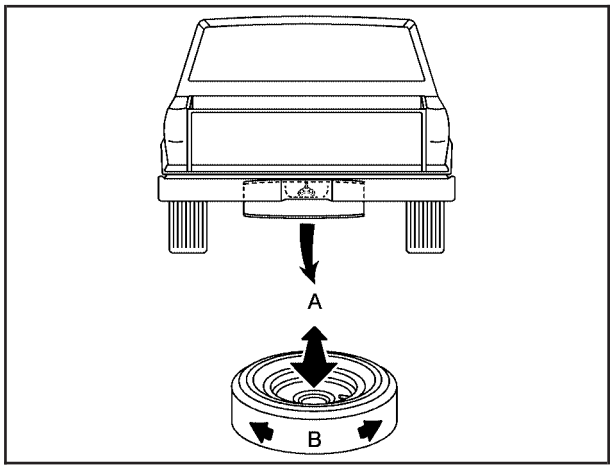


3. Attach the wheel wrench and extensions together as shown.



4. Insert the hoist end of the extension through the hole in the rear bumper and into the funnel-shaped guide.
5. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the tire part way up. Make sure the retainer is seated in the wheel opening and the valve stem is pointed down.
6. Raise the tire fully against the underside of the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you feel it skip twice. You cannot overtighten the cable.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

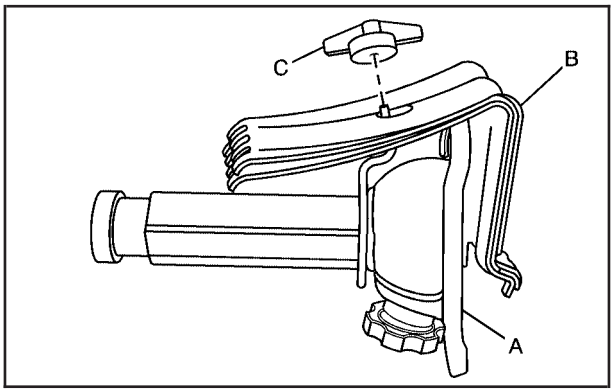


7. Make sure the tire is stored securely. Push, pull (A), and then try to turn (B) the tire. If the tire moves, check to make sure the tire valve stem is pointing down, then use the wheel wrench to loosen and then tighten the cable.

To store the tools, do the following:

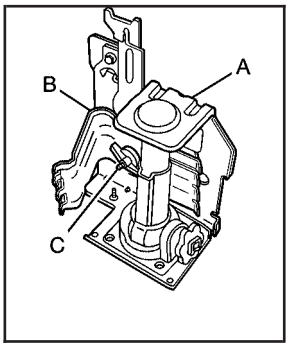
1. Return the wheel wrench, jack extensions and the storage bag to the locations described under *Removing the Spare Tire and Tools on page 403*.
2. Install the wheel blocks first. Then install the jack.
3. Secure the items in the vehicle as shown next.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



Crew Cab

A. Jack
B. Wheel Blocks
C. Wing Nut



Regular/Extended Cab

A. Jack
B. Wheel Blocks
C. Wing Nut

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Spare Tire

Compact Spare Tire

Your vehicle may have a compact spare tire. Although the compact spare tire was fully inflated when your vehicle was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. It should be 60 psi (420 kPa).

Notice: **If your vehicle has four-wheel drive and the compact spare tire is installed on your vehicle, do not drive in four-wheel drive until you can have your flat tire repaired and/or replaced. You could damage your vehicle, and the repair costs would not be covered by your warranty. Never use four-wheel drive when the compact spare tire is installed on your vehicle.**

After installing the compact spare on your vehicle, you should stop as soon as possible and make sure your vehicle's spare tire is correctly inflated. The compact spare is made to perform well at speeds up to 62 mph (100 km/h) for distances up to 500 miles (804 km). For heavy payloads or towing, and for low traction or four-wheel-drive conditions, repair or replace the full-size tire.

Of course, it is best to replace your vehicle's spare with a full-size tire as soon as you can. The spare tire will last longer and be in good shape in case you need it again.

Notice: **When the compact spare is installed, do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with guide rails. The compact spare can get caught on the rails. That can damage the tire and wheel, and maybe other parts of your vehicle.**

Do not use your compact spare on other vehicles.

And do not mix your compact spare tire or wheel with other wheels or tires. They will not fit. Keep your spare tire and its wheel together.

Notice: **Tire chains will not fit your compact spare. Using them can damage your vehicle and can damage the chains too. Do not use tire chains on your compact spare.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Full-Size Spare Tire

Your vehicle may have a full-size spare tire, which, when new, was fully inflated. A spare tire may lose air over time, so check its inflation pressure regularly. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 385* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290* for information regarding proper tire inflation and loading your vehicle. For instruction on how to remove, install, or store a spare tire, see *Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire on page 406* and *Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools on page 418*.

Your vehicle may have a different size spare tire than the road tires originally installed on your vehicle. This spare was developed for use on your vehicle, so it is all right to drive on it. If your vehicle has four-wheel drive and the different size spare tire is installed, keep the vehicle in two-wheel drive.

Notice: **If your vehicle has four-wheel drive and the different size spare tire is installed on your vehicle, do not drive in four-wheel drive until you can have your flat tire repaired and/or replaced. You could damage your vehicle, and the repair costs would not be covered by your warranty. Never use four-wheel drive when the different size spare tire is installed on your vehicle.**

After installing the spare tire on your vehicle, you should stop as soon as possible and make sure the spare is correctly inflated. The spare tire is made to perform well at speeds up to 62 mph (100 km/h) for distances up to 500 miles (804 km). For heavy payloads or towing, and for low traction or four-wheel-drive conditions, repair or replace the full-size tire. Have the damaged or flat road tire repaired or replaced as soon as you can and installed back onto your vehicle. This way, the spare tire will be available in case you need it again.

Do not mix tires and wheels of different sizes, because they will not fit. Keep your spare tire and its wheel together.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Appearance Care

Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle

Your vehicle's interior will continue to look its best if it is cleaned often. Although not always visible, dust and dirt can accumulate on your upholstery. Dirt can damage carpet, fabric, leather, and plastic surfaces. Regular vacuuming is recommended to remove particles from your upholstery. It is important to keep your upholstery from becoming and remaining heavily soiled. Soils should be removed as quickly as possible. Your vehicle's interior may experience extremes of heat that could cause stains to set rapidly.

Lighter colored interiors may require more frequent cleaning. Use care because newspapers and garments that transfer color to your home furnishings may also transfer color to your vehicle's interior.

When cleaning your vehicle's interior, only use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned. Permanent damage may result from using cleaners on surfaces for which they were not intended. Use glass cleaner only on glass. Remove any accidental over-spray from other surfaces immediately. To prevent over-spray, apply cleaner directly to the cleaning cloth.

Notice: **If you use abrasive cleaners when cleaning glass surfaces on your vehicle, you could scratch the glass. When cleaning the glass on your vehicle, use only a soft cloth and glass cleaner.**

Many cleaners contain solvents that may become concentrated in your vehicle's breathing space. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning your vehicle's interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening your vehicle's doors and windows.

Dust may be removed from small buttons and knobs using a small brush with soft bristles.

Your GM dealer has a product for cleaning your vehicle's glass. Should it become necessary, you can also obtain a product from your GM dealer to remove odors from your vehicle's upholstery.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not clean your vehicle using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a knife or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a stiff brush. It can cause damage to your vehicle's interior surfaces.
- Never apply heavy pressure or rub aggressively with a cleaning cloth. Use of heavy pressure can damage your interior and does not improve the effectiveness of soil removal.
- Use only mild, neutral-pH soaps. Avoid laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. Using too much soap will leave a residue that leaves streaks and attracts dirt. For liquid cleaners, about 20 drops per gallon (3.78 L) of water is a good guide.
- Do not heavily saturate your upholstery while cleaning.
- Damage to your vehicle's interior may result from the use of many organic solvents such as naptha, alcohol, etc.

Fabric/Carpet

Use a vacuum cleaner with a soft brush attachment frequently to remove dust and loose dirt. A canister vacuum with a beater bar in the nozzle may only be used on floor carpet and carpeted floor mats. For soils, always try to remove them first with plain water or club soda. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- For liquids: gently blot the remaining soil with a paper towel. Allow the soil to absorb into the paper towel until no more can be removed.
- For solid dry soils: remove as much as possible and then vacuum.

To clean, use the following instructions:

1. Saturate a lint-free, clean white cloth with water or club soda.
2. Wring the cloth to remove excess moisture.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Continue cleaning, using a clean area of the cloth each time it becomes soiled.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Continue to gently rub the soiled area until the cleaning cloth remains clean.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution and repeat the cleaning process that was used with plain water.

If any of the soil remains, a commercial fabric cleaner or spot lifter may be necessary. When a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter is to be used, test a small hidden area for colorfastness first. If the locally cleaned area gives any impression that a ring formation may result, clean the entire surface.

After the cleaning process has been completed, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture from the fabric or carpet.

Leather

A soft cloth dampened with water may be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used. Allow the leather to dry naturally. Do not use heat to dry. Never use steam to clean leather. Never use spot lifters or spot removers on leather. Many commercial leather cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect leather may permanently change the appearance and feel of your leather and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean your vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner. Never use shoe polish on your leather.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces

A soft cloth dampened with water may be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a clean soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used to gently remove dust and dirt. Never use spot lifters or removers on plastic surfaces. Many commercial cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect soft plastic surfaces may permanently change the appearance and feel of your interior and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean your vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner.

Some commercial products may increase gloss on your instrument panel. The increase in gloss may cause annoying reflections in the windshield and even make it difficult to see through the windshield under certain conditions.

Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. If you do, it may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Weatherstrips

Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth. During very cold, damp weather frequent application may be required. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Washing Your Vehicle

The paint finish on the vehicle provides beauty, depth of color, gloss retention, and durability.

The best way to preserve the vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by washing it often with lukewarm or cold water.

Do not wash the vehicle in the direct rays of the sun. Use a car washing soap. Do not use strong soaps or chemical detergents. Be sure to rinse the vehicle well, removing all soap residue completely. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 433*. Do not use cleaning agents that are petroleum based, or that contain acid or abrasives. All cleaning agents should be flushed promptly and not allowed to dry on the surface, or they could stain. Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter the vehicle.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under *Washing Your Vehicle on page 428*.

Finish Care

Occasional waxing or mild polishing of your vehicle by hand may be necessary to remove residue from the paint finish. You can get approved cleaning products from your dealer. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 433*.

If your vehicle has a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish, the clearcoat gives more depth and gloss to the colored basecoat. Always use waxes and polishes that are non-abrasive and made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish.

Notice: **Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on your vehicle.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage your vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Exterior painted surfaces are subject to aging, weather and chemical fallout that can take their toll over a period of years. You can help to keep the paint finish looking new by keeping your vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts

Bright metal parts should be cleaned regularly to keep their luster. Washing with water is all that is usually needed. However, you may use chrome polish on chrome or stainless steel trim, if necessary.

Use special care with aluminum trim. To avoid damaging protective trim, never use auto or chrome polish, steam or caustic soap to clean aluminum. A coating of wax, rubbed to high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

Windshield and Wiper Blades

If the windshield is not clear after using the windshield washer, or if the wiper blade chatters when running, wax, sap, or other material may be on the blade or windshield.

Clean the outside of the windshield with a glass cleaning liquid or powder and water solution. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when it is rinsed with water.

Grime from the windshield will stick to the wiper blades and affect their performance. Clean the blade by wiping vigorously with a cloth soaked in full-strength windshield washer solvent. Then rinse the blade with water.

Check the wiper blades and clean them as necessary; replace blades that look worn.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels

Your vehicle may have either aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.

Keep the wheels clean using a soft clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Notice: **If you use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels, you could damage the surface of the wheel(s). The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Use only GM-approved cleaners on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.**

The surface of these wheels is similar to the painted surface of your vehicle. Do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, abrasive cleaners, cleaners with acid, or abrasive cleaning brushes on them because you could damage the surface. Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

Notice: **Using chrome polish on aluminum wheels could damage the wheels. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Use chrome polish on chrome wheels only.**

Use chrome polish only on chrome-plated wheels, but avoid any painted surface of the wheel, and buff off immediately after application.

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes, you could damage the aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Never drive a vehicle equipped with aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes.**

Do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes. These brushes can also damage the surface of these wheels.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tires

To clean the tires, use a stiff brush with tire cleaner.

Notice: **Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on your vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on your vehicle.**

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the warranty.

Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired right away. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into major repair expense.

Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials available from your dealer. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Underbody Maintenance

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, corrosion and rust can develop on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this for you.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Some weather and atmospheric conditions can create a chemical fallout. Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted surfaces on the vehicle. This damage can take two forms: blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Although no defect in the paint job causes this, GM will repair, at no charge to the owner, the surfaces of new vehicles damaged by this fallout condition within 12 months or 12,000 miles (20 000 km) of purchase, whichever occurs first.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials

Description	Usage
Polishing Cloth Wax-Treated	Interior and exterior polishing cloth.
Tar and Road Oil Remover	Removes tar, road oil, and asphalt.
Chrome Cleaner and Polish	Use on chrome or stainless steel.
White Sidewall Tire Cleaner	Removes soil and black marks from whitewalls.
Vinyl Cleaner	Cleans vinyl.
Glass Cleaner	Removes dirt, grime, smoke and fingerprints.
Chrome and Wire Wheel Cleaner	Removes dirt and grime from chrome wheels and wire wheel covers.
Finish Enhancer	Removes dust, fingerprints, and surface contaminants. Spray on and wipe off.
Swirl Remover Polish	Removes swirl marks, fine scratches, and other light surface contamination.
Cleaner Wax	Removes light scratches and protects finish.
Foaming Tire Shine Low Gloss	Cleans, shines, and protects in one step. No wiping necessary.
Wash Wax Concentrate	Medium foaming shampoo. Cleans and lightly waxes. Biodegradable and phosphate free.
Spot Lifter	Quickly removes spots and stains from carpets, vinyl, and cloth upholstery.
Odor Eliminator	Odorless spray odor eliminator used on fabrics, vinyl, leather and carpet.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This is the legal identifier for your vehicle. It appears on a plate in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver's side. You can see it if you look through the windshield from outside your vehicle. The VIN also appears on the Certification/Tire and Service Parts labels and the certificates of title and registration.

Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code will help you identify your vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts.

Service Parts Identification Label

You will find this label on the inside of the glove box. It is very helpful if you ever need to order parts. On this label, you will find the following:

- VIN
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options and special equipment

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

Electrical System

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Notice: **Do not add anything electrical to your vehicle unless you check with your dealer first. Some electrical equipment can damage your vehicle and the damage would not be covered by your warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.**

Your vehicle has an air bag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to your vehicle, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 92*.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Windshield Wiper Fuses

The windshield wiper motor is protected by a circuit breaker and a fuse. If the motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the wiper will stop until the motor cools. If the overload is caused by some electrical problem, be sure to get it fixed.

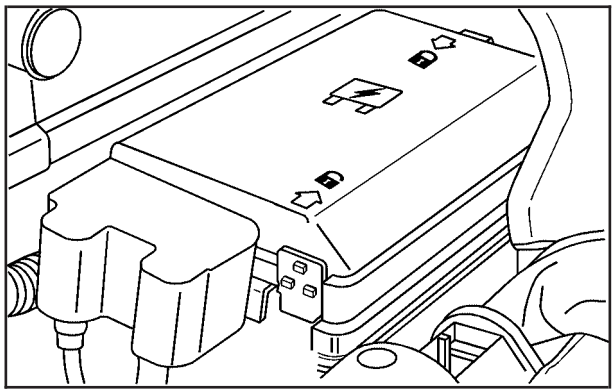
Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in your vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of fires caused by electrical problems.

Look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure you replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If you ever have a problem on the road and do not have a spare fuse, you can borrow one that has the same amperage. Just pick some feature of your vehicle that you can get along without — like the radio or cigarette lighter — and use its fuse, if it is the correct amperage. Replace it as soon as you can.

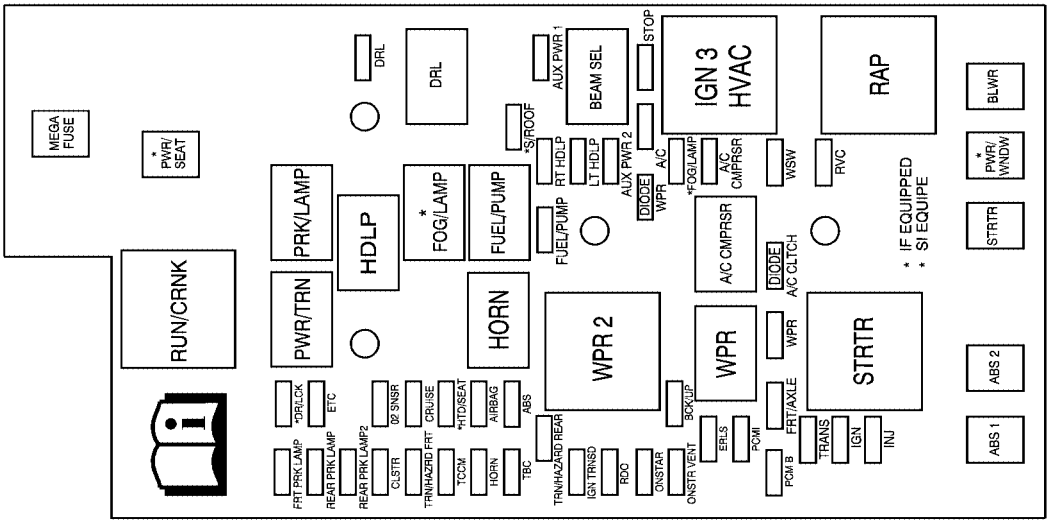
Engine Compartment Fuse Block



The engine compartment fuse block is located on the driver's side of the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 332* for more information on location.

To remove the cover, push in on the tab on the end of the cover and lift. To reinstall the cover, line up the tab and push down on the cover until the tab clicks into place.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



Fuses	Usage
DRL	Daylight Running Lamps
AUX PWR 1	Accessory Power 1
STOP	Brake Switch, Stoplamps
BLWR	Climate Control Fan
S/ROOF	Sunroof (If Equipped)

Fuses	Usage
A/C	Air Conditioning Control Head, Power Seats
PWR/SEAT	Power Seat Circuit Breaker (If Equipped)
RT HDLP	Passenger's Side Headlamp

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuses	Usage
LT HDLP	Driver's Side Headlamp
AUX PWR 2	Accessory Power 2
FOG/LAMP	Fog Lamps (If Equipped)
A/C CMPRSR	Air Conditioning Compressor
WSW	Wiper/Washer Switch
RVC	Regulated Voltage Control
PWR/WNDW	Power Windows (If Equipped)
FUEL/PUMP	Fuel Pump
STRTR	Starter Solenoid Relay
WPR	Wiper
ABS 2	Anti-lock Brake System 2 (ABS Pump)
DR/LCK	Power Door Locks (If Equipped)
ETC	Electronic Throttle Control (ETC)
02 SNSR	Oxygen Sensors, Air Injection Reactor (AIR) Relay
CRUISE	Cruise Control Switch, Inside Rearview Mirror, Transfer Case Control Module, Brake Switch, Clutch Disable
HTD/SEAT	Heated Seat (If Equipped)
AIRBAG	Supplemental Inflatable Restraint System, Sensing and Diagnostic Module

Fuses	Usage
ABS	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS), ABS module, Four-Wheel Drive, Gravity Sensor
BCK/UP	Back-up Lights
FRT/AXLE	Front Axle Actuator
TRN/HAZRD REAR	Rear Turn/Hazard Lights
ERLS	Mass Air Flow (MAF) Sensor, Can Purge Solenoid, Air Injection Reactor (AIR) Relay
PCMI	Powertrain Control Module (PCM)
TRANS	Transmission Solenoid
IGN	Ignition, Clutch Starter Switch, Neutral Safety Back-Up Switch, Ignition Coils 1-5, Air Conditioning Relay
INJ	Injectors
ABS 1	Anti-lock Brake System 1 (ABS Logic)
FRT PRK LAMP	Front Park/Turn Lamps, Driver and Passenger's Side Power Window Switches Lighting
REAR PRK LAMP	Rear Parking Lamp 1, Passenger's Side Taillamp, License Plate Lamps

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuses	Usage
REAR PRK LAMP 2	Driver's Side Rear Taillamp, Passenger Side Airbag Indicator Lighting, Instrument Panel Dimming Power (2WD/4WD switch lighting)
CLSTR	Cluster
TRN/HAZRD FRT	Turn/Hazard/Courtesy/ Cargo Lamps/Mirrors
TCCM	Transfer Case Control Module
HORN	Horn
TBC	Truck Body Controller
IGN TRNSD	Ignition Transducers
RDO	Radio
ONSTAR	OnStar®
CNSTR VENT	Fuel Canister Vent Solenoid
PCM B	Powertrain Control Module (PCM) B

Relays	Usage
DRL	Daylight Running Lamps
BEAM SEL	Beam Selection
IGN 3 HVAC	Ignition 3, Climate Control, Climate Control Head Fuse, Power Seat Fuse
RAP	Retained Accessory Power (Power Window Fuse, Wiper/Washer Switch Fuse), Sunroof Fuse

Relays	Usage
PRK/LAMP	Front Parking Lamp Fuse, Rear Parking Lamps
HDLP	Headlamps
FOG/LAMP	Fog Lamps (If Equipped)
FUEL/PUMP	Fuel Pump, Fuel Pump Fuse
A/C CMPRSR	Air Conditioning Compressor
RUN/CRNK	Run/Crank, Airbag System Fuse, Cruise Control Fuse, Ignition Fuse, Back-Up Lamps, ABS Fuse, Front Axle, PCM-1, Injectors Fuse, Transmission Fuse, ERLS
PWR/TRN	Powertrain, Electronic Throttle Control Fuse, Oxygen Sensor Fuse
HORN	Horn
WPR 2	Wiper 2 (High/Low)
WPR	Wipers (On/Off)
STRTR	Starter Relay (PCM Relay)

Miscellaneous	Usage
WPR	Diode — Wiper
A/C CLTCH	Diode — Air Conditioning, Clutch
MEGA FUSE	Mega Fuse

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate conversion capacities are given in English and metric conversions. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455* for more information.

Capacities and Specifications

Application	Capacities	
	English	Metric
Air Conditioning Refrigerant R134a	For the air conditioning system refrigerant charge amount, see the refrigerant caution label located under the hood. See your dealer for more information.	
Cooling System		
2.9L Engine	10.4 qt	9.8 L
3.7L Engine	10.6 qt	10.0 L
Engine Oil with Filter		
2.9L Engine	5.0 qt	4.7 L
3.7L Engine	6.0 qt	5.7 L
Fuel Tank	19.5 gal	76 L

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Capacities and Specifications (cont'd)

Application	Capacities	
	English	Metric
Transmission (Drain and Refill)		
Automatic	5.0 qt	4.7 L
Manual – Two-Wheel Drive	2.3 qt	2.2 L
Manual – Four-Wheel Drive	2.4 qt	2.3 L
Wheel Nut Torque	100 lb ft	140 N•m
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the appropriate level or as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.		

Engine Specifications

Type	VIN Code	Transmission	Spark Plug Gap
2.9L	9	Automatic Manual	0.040 in (1.01 mm)
3.7L	E	Automatic	0.040 in (1.01 mm)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 6 Maintenance Schedule

Maintenance Schedule 442
Introduction 442
Maintenance Requirements 442
Your Vehicle and the Environment 442
Using the Maintenance Schedule 443
Scheduled Maintenance 445
Additional Required Services 448
Maintenance Footnotes 449
Owner Checks and Services 451
At Each Fuel Fill 451
At Least Once a Month 452
At Least Once a Year 452
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 455
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts 458
Engine Drive Belt Routing 459
Maintenance Record 460

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Schedule

Introduction

Important: Keep engine oil at the proper level and change as recommended.

Have you purchased the GM Protection Plan? The Plan supplements your new vehicle warranties. See your Warranty and Owner Assistance booklet or your dealer for details.

Maintenance Requirements

Notice: **Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, replacement parts, and recommended fluids and lubricants as prescribed in this manual are necessary to keep your vehicle in good working condition. Any damage caused by failure to follow scheduled maintenance may not be covered by warranty.**

Your Vehicle and the Environment

Proper vehicle maintenance not only helps to keep your vehicle in good working condition, but also helps the environment. All recommended maintenance is important. Improper vehicle maintenance can even affect the quality of the air we breathe. Improper fluid levels or the wrong tire inflation can increase the level of emissions from your vehicle. To help protect our environment, and to keep your vehicle in good condition, be sure to maintain your vehicle properly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the Maintenance Schedule

We at General Motors want to help you keep your vehicle in good working condition. But we do not know exactly how you will drive it. You may drive very short distances only a few times a week. Or you may drive long distances all the time in very hot, dusty weather. You may use your vehicle in making deliveries. Or you may drive it to work, to do errands, or in many other ways.

Because of all the different ways people use their vehicles, maintenance needs vary. You may need more frequent checks and replacements. So please read the following and note how you drive. If you have any questions on how to keep your vehicle in good condition, see your GM Goodwrench® dealer.

This schedule is for vehicles that:

- carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits. You will find these limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 290*.
- are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- are driven off-road in the recommended manner. See *Off-Road Driving on page 260*.
- use the recommended fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 325*.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The services in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 445* should be performed when indicated. See *Additional Required Services on page 448* and *Maintenance Footnotes on page 449* for further information.

⚠ CAUTION:

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. In trying to do some jobs, you can be seriously injured. Do your own maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment for the job. If you have any doubt, see your GM Goodwrench® dealer to have a qualified technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 324*.

Some maintenance services can be complex. So, unless you are technically qualified and have the necessary equipment, you should have your GM Goodwrench® dealer do these jobs.

When you go to your GM Goodwrench® dealer for your service needs, you will know that GM-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine GM parts.

If you want to purchase service information, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 482*.

Owner Checks and Services on page 451 tells you what should be checked, when to check it, and what you can easily do to help keep your vehicle in good condition.

The proper replacement parts, fluids, and lubricants to use are listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455* and *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 458*. When your vehicle is serviced, make sure these are used. All parts should be replaced and all necessary repairs done before you or anyone else drives the vehicle. We recommend the use of genuine GM parts.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Scheduled Maintenance

When the CHANGE OIL message comes on, it means that service is required for your vehicle. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 200*. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the engine oil life system may not indicate that vehicle service is necessary for over a year. However, your engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your GM Goodwrench® dealer has GM-trained service technicians who will perform this work using genuine GM parts and reset the system.

If the engine oil life system is ever reset accidentally, you must service your vehicle within 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last service. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 336* for information on the Engine Oil Life System and resetting the system.

When the CHANGE OIL message appears, certain services, checks, and inspections are required. Required services are described in the following for “Maintenance I” and “Maintenance II.” Generally, it is recommended that your first service be Maintenance I, your second service be Maintenance II, and that you alternate Maintenance I and Maintenance II thereafter. However, in some cases, Maintenance II may be required more often.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance I — Use Maintenance I if the CHANGE OIL message comes on within 10 months since the vehicle was purchased or Maintenance II was performed.

Maintenance II — Use Maintenance II if the previous service performed was Maintenance I. Always use Maintenance II whenever the message comes on 10 months or more since the last service or if the message has not come on at all for one year.

Scheduled Maintenance

Service	Maintenance I	Maintenance II
Change engine oil and filter. See *Engine Oil on page 333*. Reset oil life system. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 336*. *An Emission Control Service.*	•	•
Visually check for any leaks or damage. *See footnote (g).*	•	•
Inspect engine air cleaner filter. If necessary, replace filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 338*. *See footnote (j).*		•
Rotate tires and check inflation pressures and wear. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 391* and “Tire Wear Inspection” in *At Least Once a Month on page 452*.	•	•
Inspect brake system. *See footnote (a).*	•	•

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Scheduled Maintenance (cont'd)

Service	Maintenance I	Maintenance II
Check engine coolant and windshield washer fluid levels and add fluid as needed.	•	•
Perform any needed additional services. See "Additional Required Services" in this section.	•	•
Inspect suspension and steering components. *See footnote (b).*		•
Inspect engine cooling system. *See footnote (c).*		•
Inspect wiper blades. *See footnote (d).*		•
Inspect restraint system components. *See footnote (e).*		•
Lubricate body components. *See footnote (f).*		•
Check transmission and transfer case fluid levels and add fluid as needed.		•

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Additional Required Services

The following services should be performed at the first maintenance service (I or II) after the indicated miles (kilometers) shown for each item.

Additional Required Services

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (40 000)	50,000 (80 000)	75,000 (120 000)	100,000 (160 000)	125,000 (200 000)	150,000 (240 000)
Inspect fuel system for damage or leaks.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect exhaust system for loose or damaged components.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Replace engine air cleaner filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 338*.		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (severe service). *See footnote (h).*		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (normal service).				•		
Replace spark plugs. *An Emission Control Service.*				•		

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Additional Required Services (cont'd)

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (40 000)	50,000 (80 000)	75,000 (120 000)	100,000 (160 000)	125,000 (200 000)	150,000 (240 000)
Engine cooling system service (or every five years, whichever occurs first). *An Emission Control Service. See footnote (i).*						•
Inspect engine accessory drive belt. *An Emission Control Service. See footnote (k).*						•

Maintenance Footnotes

(a) *Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect drum brake linings/shoes for wear or cracks. Inspect other brake parts, including drums, wheel cylinders, calipers, parking brake, etc. Check parking brake adjustment.*

(b) *Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear. Inspect power steering lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Visually check constant velocity joints, rubber boots, and axle seals for leaks.*

(c) *Visually inspect hoses and have them replaced if they are cracked, swollen, or deteriorated. Inspect all pipes, fittings, and clamps; replace with genuine GM parts as needed. To help ensure proper operation, a pressure test of the cooling system and pressure cap and cleaning the outside of the radiator and air conditioning condenser is recommended at least once a year.*

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(d) *Visually inspect wiper blades for wear or cracking. Replace wiper blades that appear worn or damaged or that streak or miss areas of the windshield.*

(e) *Make sure the safety belt reminder light and all your belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Have any torn or frayed safety belts replaced. Also look for any opened or broken airbag coverings, and have them repaired or replaced. The airbag system does not need regular maintenance.*

(f) *Lubricate all key lock cylinders, body door and fuel door hinges, latches and locks (including glove box and console doors), hood latch assembly, secondary latch, pivots, spring anchor, release pawl, and any moving seat hardware. Lubricate hood safety lever pivot and prop rod pivot and tailgate latch bolt, handle assembly pivot points, and hinges. More frequent lubrication may be required when exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.*

(g) *A fluid loss in any vehicle system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired and the fluid level checked. Add fluid if needed.*

(h) *Change automatic transmission fluid and filter if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:*

- *In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.*
- *In hilly or mountainous terrain.*
- *When doing frequent trailer towing.*
- *Uses such as found in taxi, police, or delivery service.*

(i) *Drain, flush, and refill cooling system. This service can be complex; you should have your dealer perform this service. See Engine Coolant on page 345 for what to use. Inspect hoses. Clean radiator, condenser, pressure cap, and filler neck. Pressure test the cooling system and pressure cap.*

(j) *If you drive regularly under dusty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.*

(k) *Visually inspect belt for fraying, excessive cracks, or obvious damage. Replace belt if necessary.*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Owner Checks and Services

These owner checks and services should be performed at the intervals specified to help ensure the safety, dependability, and emission control performance of your vehicle. Your GM Goodwrench® dealer can assist you with these checks and services.

Be sure any necessary repairs are completed at once. Whenever any fluids or lubricants are added to your vehicle, make sure they are the proper ones, as shown in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 455*.

At Each Fuel Fill

It is important to perform these underhood checks at each fuel fill.

Engine Oil Level Check

Check the engine oil level and add the proper oil if necessary. See *Engine Oil on page 333* for further details.

Notice: **It is important to check your oil regularly and keep it at the proper level. Failure to keep your engine oil at the proper level can cause damage to your engine not covered by your warranty.**

Engine Coolant Level Check

Check the engine coolant level and add DEX-COOL® coolant mixture if necessary. See *Engine Coolant on page 345* for further details.

Windshield Washer Fluid Level Check

Check the windshield washer fluid level in the windshield washer fluid reservoir and add the proper fluid if necessary.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

At Least Once a Month

Tire Inflation Check

Visually inspect your vehicle's tires and make sure they are inflated to the correct pressures. Do not forget to check the spare tire. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 385*. Check to make sure the spare tire is stored securely. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 402*.

Tire Wear Inspection

Tire rotation may be required for high mileage highway drivers prior to the Engine Oil Life System service notification. Check the tires for wear and, if necessary, rotate the tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 391*.

At Least Once a Year

Starter Switch Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See *Parking Brake on page 130*.

   Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

3. On automatic transmission vehicles, try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your GM Goodwrench® dealer for service.

   On manual transmission vehicles, put the shift lever in NEUTRAL (N), push the clutch pedal down halfway, and try to start the engine. The vehicle should start only when the clutch pedal is pushed down all the way to the floor. If the vehicle starts when the clutch pedal is not pushed all the way down, contact your GM Goodwrench® dealer for service.

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control System Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 130*.

   Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition to ON, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of PARK (P) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of PARK (P), contact your GM Goodwrench® dealer for service.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Ignition Transmission Lock Check

While parked, and with the parking brake set, try to turn the ignition to LOCK in each shift lever position.

- With an automatic transmission, the ignition should turn to LOCK only when the shift lever is in PARK (P). The ignition key should come out only in LOCK.
- With a manual transmission, the ignition key should come out only in LOCK.

Contact your GM Goodwrench® dealer if service is required.

Parking Brake and Automatic Transmission Park (P) Mechanism Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this check, your vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of your vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and transmission in NEUTRAL (N), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the PARK (P) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to PARK (P). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your GM Goodwrench® dealer if service is required.

Underbody Flushing Service

At least every spring, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to clean thoroughly any areas where mud and other debris can collect.

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name, part number, or specification may be obtained from your dealer.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil	Engine oil which meets GM Standard GM6094M and displays the American Petroleum Institute Certified for Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. GM Goodwrench® oil meets all the requirements for your vehicle. To determine the proper viscosity for your vehicle's engine, see *Engine Oil on page 333*.
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL® Coolant. See *Engine Coolant on page 345*.
Hydraulic Brake System	Delco® Supreme 11 Brake Fluid or equivalent DOT-3 brake fluid.
Windshield Washer	GM Optikleen® Washer Solvent.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Parking Brake Cable Guides	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Power Steering System	GM Power Steering Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 89021184, in Canada 89021186).
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Manual Transmission	Manual Transmission Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 89021806, in Canada 89021807).
Hydraulic Clutch System	Hydraulic Clutch Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 12345347, in Canada 10953517) or equivalent DOT-3 brake fluid.
Key Lock Cylinders	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Chassis Lubrication	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Front and Rear Axle	SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Axle Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12378261, in Canada 10953455) meeting GM Specification 9986115.
Transfer Case	Synchromesh Transmission Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 12345349, in Canada 10953465).
Rear Driveline Center Spline and Universal Joints	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Constant Velocity Universal Joint	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Hood Latch Assembly, Secondary Latch, Pivots, Spring Anchor, and Release Pawl	Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (GM Part No. U.S. 12346293, in Canada 992723) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Hood and Door Hinges, Body Door Hinge Pins, Liftgate Hinge and Linkage, Folding Seats, and Fuel Door Hinge	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Outer Tailgate Handle Pivot Points and Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 3634770, in Canada 10953518) or Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. U.S. 12345579, in Canada 992887).
Weatherstrip Squeaks	Synthetic Grease with Teflon, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12371287, in Canada 10953437).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

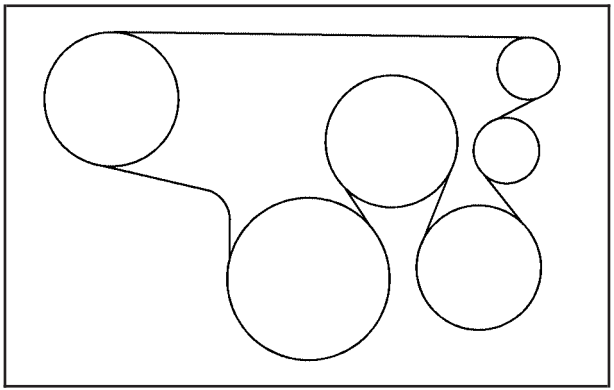
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your GM dealer.

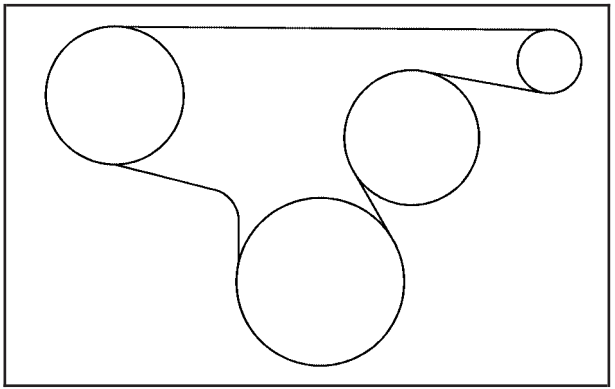
Part	GM Part Number	ACDelco® Part Number
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter	15202408	A1624C
Engine Oil Filter		
2.9L Engine	88984215	PF46
3.7L Engine	89017342	PF61
Spark Plugs	12598004	41-103
Windshield Wiper Blades		
Driver's Side — 22 inches (55 cm)	88958226	—
Passenger's Side — 19 inches (48 cm)	88958228	—

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Drive Belt Routing



2.9L and 3.7L Engines with air



2.9L and 3.7L Engine without air

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Record

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. See *Maintenance Requirements on page 442*. Any additional information from *Owner Checks and Services on page 451* can be added on the following record pages. You should retain all maintenance receipts.

Maintenance Record

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Section 7 Customer Assistance Information

Customer Assistance and Information 464
Customer Satisfaction Procedure 464
Online Owner Center 467
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users 468
Customer Assistance Offices 468
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 469
Roadside Assistance Program 470
Courtesy Transportation 473
Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data Recorders 476
Collision Damage Repair 477
Reporting Safety Defects 481
Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 481
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 481
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 481
Service Publications Ordering Information 482

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance and Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Chevrolet. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of your vehicle will be resolved by your dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

STEP ONE: Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service, or parts manager, contact the owner of the dealership or the general manager.

STEP TWO: If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by the dealership without further help, in the U.S., contact the Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center by calling 1-800-222-1020. In Canada, contact General Motors of Canada Customer Communication Centre by calling 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French).

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Please have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance Representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.
- Dealership name and location.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage (kilometers).

When contacting Chevrolet, please remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest you follow Step One first if you have a concern.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP THREE — U.S. Owners: Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps 1 and 2, you should file with the BBB Auto Line Program to enforce your rights.

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out of court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB Auto Line Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203-1838

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage, and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP THREE — Canadian Owners: In the event that you do not feel your concerns have been addressed after following the procedure outlined in Steps 1 and 2, General Motors of Canada Limited wants you to be aware of its participation in a no-charge Mediation/Arbitration Program. General Motors of Canada Limited has committed to binding arbitration of owner disputes involving factory-related vehicle service claims. The program provides for the review of the facts involved by an impartial third party arbiter, and may include an informal hearing before the arbiter. The program is designed so that the entire dispute settlement process, from the time you file your complaint to the final decision, should be completed in about 70 days. We believe our impartial program offers advantages over courts in most jurisdictions because it is informal, quick, and free of charge.

For further information concerning eligibility in the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP), call toll-free 1-800-207-0685. Alternatively, you may call the General Motors Customer Communication Centre, 1-800-263-3777 (English), 1-800-263-7854 (French), or you may write to:

The Mediation/Arbitration Program
c/o Customer Communication Centre
General Motors of Canada Limited
Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Your inquiry should be accompanied by your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Owner Center

Online Owner Center (United States only)

The Owner Center is a resource for your GM ownership needs. Specific vehicle information can be found in one place.

The Online Owner Center allows you to:

- Get e-mail service reminders.
- Access information about your specific vehicle, including tips and videos and an electronic version of this owner manual.
- Keep track of your vehicle's service history and maintenance schedule.
- Find GM dealers for service nationwide.
- Receive special promotions and privileges only available to members.

Refer to www.MyGMLink.com on the web for updated information and to register your vehicle.

My GM Canada (Canada only)

My GM Canada is a password-protected section of gmcanada.com where you can save information on GM vehicles, get personalized offers, and use handy tools and forms with greater ease.

Here are a few of the valuable tools and services you will have access to:

- My Showroom: Find and save information on vehicles and current offers in your area.
- My Dealers/Retailers: Save details such as address and phone number for each of your preferred GM Dealers or Retailers.
- My Driveway: Receive service reminders and helpful advice on owning and maintaining your vehicle.
- My Preferences: Manage your profile, subscribe to E-News and use tools and forms with greater ease.

To sign up to My GM Canada, visit the My GM Canada section within www.gmcanada.com.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Chevrolet has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user in the U.S. can communicate with Chevrolet by dialing: 1-800-833-CHEV (2438). (TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.)

Customer Assistance Offices

Chevrolet encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. However, if a customer wishes to write or e-mail Chevrolet, the letter should be addressed to:

United States — Customer Assistance

Chevrolet Motor Division
Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33170
Detroit, MI 48232-5170

www.Chevrolet.com
1-800-222-1020
1-800-833-2438 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-CHEV-USA (243-8872)
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

From Puerto Rico:
1-800-496-9992 (English)
1-800-496-9993 (Spanish)
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

From U.S. Virgin Islands:
1-800-496-9994
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

Canada — Customer Assistance

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

www.gmcanada.com
1-800-263-3777 (English)
1-800-263-7854 (French)
1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-268-6800

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

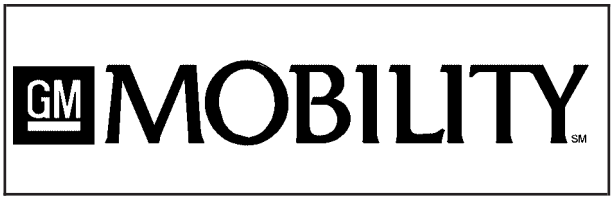
Overseas — Customer Assistance

Please contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

Mexico, Central America and Caribbean Islands/Countries (Except Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands) — Customer Assistance

General Motors de Mexico, S. de R.L. de C.V.
Customer Assistance Center
Paseo de la Reforma # 2740
Col. Lomas de Bezares
C.P. 11910, Mexico, D.F.
01-800-508-0000
Long Distance: 011-52-53 29 0 800

GM Mobility Reimbursement Program



This program, available to qualified applicants, can reimburse you up to $1,000 of the cost of eligible aftermarket adaptive equipment required for your vehicle, such as hand controls or a wheelchair/scooter lift.

The offer is available for a very limited period of time from the date of vehicle purchase/lease. For more details, or to determine your vehicle's eligibility, visit gmmobility.com or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

General Motors of Canada also has a Mobility Program. Call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (463-7483) for details. TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Roadside Assistance Program

In the U.S., call **1-800-CHEV-USA (1-800-243-8872)**

In Canada, call **1-800-268-6800**

Service available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

As the owner of a new Chevrolet vehicle, you are automatically enrolled in the Chevrolet Roadside Assistance program. This value-added service is intended to provide you with peace of mind as you drive in the city or travel the open road.

Who is Covered?

Roadside Assistance coverage is for the vehicle operator, regardless of ownership. A person driving this vehicle without the consent of the owner is not eligible for coverage.

The following services are provided in the U.S. during the Bumper-to-Bumper warranty period and, in Canada, during the Base Warranty coverage period of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, up to a maximum coverage of $100.

- **Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the customer to get to the nearest service station (about $5 in the U.S. and 10 litres in Canada). Service to provide diesel may be restricted. For safety reasons, propane and other alternative fuels will not be provided through this service.
- **Lock-out Service:** To ensure security, the driver must present the vehicle registration and personal ID before lock-out service is provided. Lock-out service will be covered at no charge if you are unable to gain entry into your vehicle. If your vehicle will not start, Roadside Assistance will arrange to have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealership. In the U.S., replacement keys made at the customer's expense will be covered within 10 miles (16 km).

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Emergency Tow From a Public Roadway or Highway:** Tow to the nearest dealership for warranty service or in the event of a vehicle-disabling accident. Winch-out assistance when the vehicle is mired in sand, mud, or snow.
- **Flat Tire Change:** If your vehicle has a spare tire, installation of the tire in good condition will be covered at no charge. The customer is responsible for the repair or replacement of the tire if not covered by a warrantable failure.
- **Jump Start:** No-start occurrences which require a battery jump start will be covered at no charge.

Additional Services for Canadian Customers

- **Trip Routing Service:** Upon Request, Roadside Assistance will send you detailed, computer-personalized maps, highlighting your choice of either the most direct route or the most scenic route to your destination, anywhere in North America, along with any helpful travel information we may have pertaining to your trip. To request this service, please call us toll-free at 1-800-268-6800.

  We will make every attempt to send your personalized trip routing as quickly as possible, but it is best to allow three weeks before your planned departure date. Trip routing requests will be limited to six per calendar year.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Assistance:** In the event of a warranty related vehicle disablement, while on route and over 250 kilometres from original point of departure, you may qualify for trip interruption expense assistance. This assistance covers reasonable reimbursement of up to a maximum of $500 (Canadian) for (A) meals (maximum of $50/day), (B) lodging (maximum of $100/night) and (C) alternate ground transportation (maximum of $40/day). This benefit is to assist you with some of the unplanned expense you may incur while waiting for your vehicle to be repaired.

  Pre-authorization, original detailed receipts and a copy of the repair order are required.

  Once authorization has been given, your advisor will help you make any necessary arrangements and explain how to claim for trip interruption expense assistance.
- **Alternative Service:** There may be times, when Roadside Assistance cannot provide timely assistance, your advisor may authorize you to secure local emergency road service, and you will be reimbursed up to $100 upon submission of the original receipt to Roadside Assistance.

In many instances, mechanical failures are covered under Chevrolet's Bumper-to-Bumper warranty, and the duration of the Base Warranty Coverage for Canadian customers of the new Vehicle Limited Warranty. However, any cost for parts and labor for non-warranty repairs are the responsibility of the driver.

For prompt and efficient assistance when calling, please provide the following to the Roadside Assistance Representative:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number.
- Telephone number of your location.
- Location of the vehicle.
- Model, year, color, and license plate number.
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), and delivery date of the vehicle.
- Description of the problem.

While we hope you never have the occasion to use our service, it is added security while traveling for you and your family. Remember, we are only a phone call away. U.S. customers call Chevrolet Roadside Assistance: **1-800-CHEV-USA (1-800-243-8872)**, text telephone (TTY) users, call **1-888-889-2438**, Canadian customers call **1-800-268-6800**.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Chevrolet and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to limit services or reimbursement to an owner or driver when, in their sole discretion, the claims become excessive in frequency or type of occurrence.

Roadside Assistance is not part of or included in the coverage provided by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Chevrolet and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Assistance program at any time without notification.

Towing and Road Service Exclusions

Specifically excluded from Roadside Assistance coverage are towing or services for vehicles operated on a non-public roadway or highway, fines, impound towing caused by a violation of local, Municipal, State, Provincial, or Federal law, and mounting, dismounting or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices.

Courtesy Transportation

To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for new vehicles.

For warranty repairs during the Bumper-to-Bumper (U.S.) or Base Warranty Coverage period (Canada), provided by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, interim transportation may be available under the Courtesy Transportation program. Several courtesy transportation options are available to assist in reducing your inconvenience when warranty repairs are required.

Courtesy Transportation is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty and is available only at participating dealers. A separate booklet entitled “Warranty and Owner Assistance Information” furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Scheduling Service Appointments

When your vehicle requires warranty service, you should contact your dealer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising your service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If your vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety-related. If it is, please call your dealership, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If the dealer requests that you simply drop the vehicle off for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for the same day repair.

Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait, GM helps to minimize your inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, your dealer can offer you one of the following:

Shuttle Service

Shuttle service is the preferred means of offering Courtesy Transportation and participating dealers can provide you with shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes one-way or round trip shuttle service within reasonable time and distance parameters for the dealer's area.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If your vehicle requires overnight warranty repairs, and public transportation is used as 'shuttle service,' the reimbursement is limited to the associated shuttle allowance and must be supported by original receipts. In addition, for U.S. customers, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, limited reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts.

Courtesy Rental Vehicle

Your dealer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle that you obtain if your vehicle is kept for an overnight warranty repair. Rental reimbursement will be limited and must be supported by original receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state/provincial, local, and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

Generally it is not possible to provide a like-vehicle as a courtesy rental.

Additional Program Information

All program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Please contact your dealer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate dealer personnel.

General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle, like other modern motor vehicles, has a number of sophisticated computer systems that monitor and control several aspects of the vehicle's performance. Your vehicle uses on-board vehicle computers to monitor emission control components to optimize fuel economy, to monitor conditions for airbag deployment and, if the vehicle has the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS), to provide anti-lock braking and to help the driver control the vehicle in difficult driving situations. Some information may be stored during regular operations to facilitate repair of detected malfunctions; other information is stored only in a crash event by computer systems, such as those commonly called Event Data Recorders (EDR).

In a crash event, computer systems, such as the airbag Sensing and Diagnostic Module (SDM) in your vehicle may record information about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated, such as data related to engine speed, brake application, throttle position, vehicle speed, safety belt usage, airbag readiness, airbag performance, and the severity of a collision. This information has been used to improve vehicle crash performance and may be used to improve crash performance of future vehicles and driving safety. Unlike the data recorders on many airplanes, these on-board systems do not record sounds, such as conversation of vehicle occupants.

To read this information, special equipment is needed and access to the vehicle or the device that stores the data is required. GM will not access information about a crash event or share it with others other than:

- with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee,
- in response to an official request of police or similar government office,
- as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process, or
- as required by law.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

In addition, once GM collects or receives data, GM may:

- use the data for GM research needs,
- make it available for research where appropriate confidentiality is to be maintained and need is shown, or
- share summary data which is not tied to a specific vehicle with non-GM organizations for research purposes.

Others, such as law enforcement, may have access to the special equipment that can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the device that stores the data.

If your vehicle has OnStar®, please check the OnStar® subscription service agreement or manual for information on its operations and data collection.

Collision Damage Repair

If your vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs will diminish your vehicle's resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

Collision Parts

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which your vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are your best choice to assure that your vehicle's designed appearance, durability, and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain your GM New Vehicle Warranty.

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior accidents. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

A recycled original equipment GM part, may be an acceptable choice to maintain your vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance, however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for your vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts are not covered by that warranty.

Repair Facility

GM also recommends that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. Your GM dealer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state of the art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

Insuring Your Vehicle

Protect your investment in your GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms. Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to your GM vehicle by limiting compensation for damage repairs by using aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you assure your vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts. If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

If your vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that assures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read your lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of your lease for poor quality repairs.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If an Accident Occurs

Here is what to do if you are involved in an accident.

- Try to relax and then check to make sure you are all right. If you are uninjured, make sure that no one else in your vehicle, or the other vehicle, is injured.
- If there has been an injury, call 911 for help. Do not leave the scene of an accident until all matters have been taken care of. Move your vehicle only if its position puts you in danger or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.
- Give only the necessary and requested information to police and other parties involved in the accident. Do not discuss your personal condition, mental frame of mind, or anything unrelated to the accident. This will help guard against post-accident legal action.
- If you need roadside assistance, call GM Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 470* for more information.
- If your vehicle cannot be driven, know where the towing service will be taking it. Get a card from the tow truck operator or write down the driver's name, the service's name, and the phone number.
- Remove any valuables from your vehicle before it is towed away. Make sure this includes your insurance information and registration if you keep these items in your vehicle.
- Gather the important information you will need from the other driver. Things like name, address, phone number, driver's license number, vehicle license plate, vehicle make, model and model year, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), insurance company and policy number, and a general description of the damage to the other vehicle.
- If possible, call your insurance company from the scene of the accident. They will walk you through the information they will need. If they ask for a police report, phone or go to the police department headquarters the next day and you can get a copy of the report for a nominal fee. In some states/provinces with "no fault" insurance laws, a report may not be necessary. This is especially true if there are no injuries and both vehicles are drivable.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Choose a reputable collision repair facility for your vehicle. Whether you select a GM dealer or a private collision repair facility to fix the damage, make sure you are comfortable with them. Remember, you will have to feel comfortable with their work for a long time.
- Once you have an estimate, read it carefully and make sure you understand what work will be performed on your vehicle. If you have a question, ask for an explanation. Reputable shops welcome this opportunity.

Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process

In the event that your vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair. If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take your vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by your GM vehicle warranty.

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with your repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts. Remember if your vehicle is leased you may be obligated to have the vehicle repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as cost stays within reasonable limits.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA
400 Seventh Street, SW.
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should immediately notify Transport Canada, in addition to notifying General Motors of Canada Limited. You may call them at 1-800-333-0510 or write to:

Transport Canada
Road Safety Branch
2780 Sheffield Road
Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9

Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, we certainly hope you will notify General Motors. Please call the Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center at 1-800-222-1020, or write:

Chevrolet Motor Division
Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33170
Detroit, MI 48232-5170

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

In Canada, please call us at 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French). Or, write:

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Service Publications Ordering Information

Service Manuals

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on engines, transmission, axle suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

Transmission, Transaxle, Transfer Case Unit Repair Manual

This manual provides information on unit repair service procedures, adjustments, and specifications for GM transmissions, transaxles, and transfer cases.

Service Bulletins

Service Bulletins give technical service information needed to knowledgeably service General Motors cars and trucks. Each bulletin contains instructions to assist in the diagnosis and service of your vehicle.

In Canada, the service bulletin reference number can be obtained by contacting your General Motors dealer or by calling 1-800-GM-DRIVE (1-800-463-7483). This reference number is needed to order the service bulletin from Helm, Inc.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $6.00 US + Processing Fee

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Owner Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The owner manual will include the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

In-Portfolio: Includes a Portfolio, Owner Manual, and Warranty Booklet.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $35.00 US + Processing Fee

Without Portfolio: Owner's Manual only.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $25.00 US + Processing Fee

Current and Past Model Order Forms

Technical Service Bulletins and Manuals are available for current and past model GM vehicles. To request an order form, please specify year and model name of the vehicle.

ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-551-4123
Monday-Friday 8:00 AM - 6:00 PM
Eastern Time

For Credit Card Orders Only (VISA-MasterCard-Discover), visit Helm, Inc. on the World Wide Web at: www.helminc.com

Or you can write to:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation. Allow ample time for delivery.

Note to Canadian Customers: All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds. Canadian residents are to make checks payable in U.S. funds.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTES

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

A

Accessories and Modifications 323
Accessory Power Outlet(s) 174
Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 93
Additives, Fuel 326
Add-On Electrical Equipment 434
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 338
Air Conditioning 176
Airbag
  Passenger Status Indicator 184
  Readiness Light 183
Airbag Sensing and Diagnostic Module (SDM) 476
Airbag System 76
  Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 93
  How Does an Airbag Restrain? 84
  Passenger Sensing System 86
  Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 92
  What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 84
  What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 85
Airbag System (cont.)
  When Should an Airbag Inflate? 82
  Where Are the Airbags? 79
AM-FM Radio 207
Antenna, Fixed Mast 244
Antenna, XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 244
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 251
Anti-Lock Brake, System Warning Light 188
Appearance Care
  Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels 430
  Care of Safety Belts 427
  Chemical Paint Spotting 432
  Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses 428
  Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle 424
  Fabric/Carpet 425
  Finish Care 428
  Finish Damage 431
  Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 427
  Leather 426
  Sheet Metal Damage 431
  Tires 431

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Appearance Care (cont.)
Underbody Maintenance 432
Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials 433
Washing Your Vehicle 428
Weatherstrips 427
Windshield and Wiper Blades 429
Ashtray(s) 175
Assist Handles 151
Audio System(s) 205
AM-FM Radio 207
Care of Your CD Player 243
Care of Your CDs 243
Chime Level Adjustment 244
Fixed Mast Antenna 244
Radio with CD 210
Radio with Six-Disc CD 221
Setting the Time for Radios with Radio Data Systems (RDS) 207
Setting the Time for Radios without Radio Data Systems (RDS) 206
Theft-Deterrent Feature 242
Understanding Radio Reception 242
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 244
Automatic Headlamp System 170
Automatic Transmission
Fluid 339
Operation 120

B

Battery 361
Electric Power Management 173
Run-Down Protection 174
Battery Warning Light 186
Before Leaving on a Long Trip 280
Brake
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 251
Emergencies 253
Parking 130
System Warning Light 187
Brakes 357
Braking 250
Braking in Emergencies 253
Break-In, New Vehicle 115

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Bulb Replacement 370
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) 372
Front Turn Signal, Parking and Daytime Running Lamps 372
Halogen Bulbs 370
Headlamps 371
License Plate Lamps 374
Replacement Bulbs 374
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps 373
Buying New Tires 394

C

Calibration 139, 142
California Fuel 326
California Proposition 65 Warning 323
Canadian Owners 3
Capacities and Specifications 439
Carbon Monoxide 108, 136, 284, 305
Care of
Safety Belts 427
Your CD Player 243
Your CDs 243
CD, MP3 234
Center Front Passenger Position, Safety Belts 35
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) 372
Chains, Tire 400
Check
Engine Light 190
Checking Things Under the Hood 330
Chemical Paint Spotting 432
Child Restraints
Child Restraint Systems 49
Infants and Young Children 46
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 56
Older Children 43
Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position 68
Securing a Child Restraint in the Center Front Seat Position 71
Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position 71
Where to Put the Restraint 53
Chime Level Adjustment 244
Cigarette Lighter 175

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning
Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels 430
Exterior Lamps/Lenses 428
Fabric/Carpet 425
Finish Care 428
Inside of Your Vehicle 424
Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 427
Leather 426
Tires 431
Underbody Maintenance 432
Washing Your Vehicle 428
Weatherstrips 427
Windshield and Wiper Blades 429
Climate Control System 176
Outlet Adjustment 178
Clutch, Hydraulic 344
Collision Damage Repair 477
Comfort Guides, Rear Safety Belt 39
Compass 139, 142
Content Theft-Deterrent 113
Control of a Vehicle 250
Coolant
Engine Temperature Gage 189
Heater, Engine 119
Cooling System 350
Cruise Control 164
Cruise Control Light 194
Cupholder(s) 150
Customer Assistance Information
Courtesy Transportation 473
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users 468
Customer Assistance Offices 468
Customer Satisfaction Procedure 464
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 469
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 481
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 481
Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 481
Roadside Assistance Program 470
Service Publications Ordering Information 482

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

D

Daytime Running Lamps 170
Daytime Running Lamps Indicator Light 195
Defensive Driving 246
Disc, MP3 234
Doing Your Own Service Work 324
Dome Lamp 173
Dome Lamp Override 173
Door
  Locks 104
  Power Door Locks 105
  Programmable Automatic Door Locks 106
  Rear Door Security Locks 106
  Rear Doors 107
Driver
  Position, Safety Belt 25
Driver Information Center (DIC) 196
  DIC Controls and Displays 196
  DIC Warnings and Messages 200
Driving
  At Night 274
  City 278
  Defensive 246
Driving (cont.)
  Drunken 247
  Freeway 279
  Hill and Mountain Roads 282
  In Rain and on Wet Roads 275
  Off-Road 260
  Recovery Hooks 289
  Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out 288
  Winter 284

E

Electric Power Management 173
Electrical System
  Add-On Equipment 434
  Engine Compartment Fuse Block 435
  Fuses and Circuit Breakers 435
  Windshield Wiper Fuses 435
Engine
  Air Cleaner/Filter 338
  Battery 361
  Check and Service Engine Soon Light 190
  Coolant 345
  Coolant Heater 119

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine (cont.)
Coolant Temperature Gage 189
Drive Belt Routing 459
Engine Compartment Overview 332
Exhaust 136
Fan Noise 355
Oil 333
Oil Life System 336
Overheating 348
Starting 118
Event Data Recorders (EDR) 476
Exit Lighting 173
Extender, Safety Belt 42
Exterior Cargo Lamps 172
Exterior Lamps 168

F

Filter
Engine Air Cleaner 338
Finish Damage 431
Fixed Mast Antenna 244
Flashers, Hazard Warning 160
Flash-to-Pass 163
Flat Tire 401
Flat Tire, Changing 402
Flat Tire, Storing 418
Fluid
Automatic Transmission 339
Manual Transmission 342
Power Steering 355
Windshield Washer 356
Fog Lamps 171
Four-Wheel Drive 126, 368
Front Armrest Storage Area 151
Front Axle 369
Front Turn Signal, Parking and Daytime Running Lamps 372
Fuel 325
Additives 326
California Fuel 326
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 330
Filling Your Tank 328
Fuels in Foreign Countries 327
Gage 195
Gasoline Octane 325
Gasoline Specifications 325
Fuses
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 435
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 435
Windshield Wiper 435

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

G

Gage
- Engine Coolant Temperature 189
- Fuel 195
- Speedometer 181
- Tachometer 181

Gasoline
- Octane 325
- Specifications 325

Glove Box 150
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 469

H

Hazard Warning Flashers 160
Head Restraints 15
Headlamps 371
- Automatic Headlamp System 170
- Bulb Replacement 370
- Daytime Running Lamps 170
- Flash-to-Pass 163
- Halogen Bulbs 370
- High/Low Beam Changer 163
- On Reminder 169

Heated Seats 11
Heater 176
Highbeam On Light 194
Highway Hypnosis 281
Hill and Mountain Roads 282
Hood
- Checking Things Under 330
- Release 331

Horn 160
How to Use This Manual 4
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 25
Hydraulic Clutch 344

I

Ignition Positions 116
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 46
Inflation - Tire Pressure 385
Instrument Panel
- Overview 158

Instrument Panel (I/P)
- Brightness 172
- Cluster 180

Interior Lamps 172

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

J

Jump Starting 362

K

Keyless Entry System 101
Keys 99

L

Labeling, Tire Sidewall 378
Lamps
- Battery Run-Down Protection 174
- Dome 173
- Dome Lamp Override 173
- Electric Power Management 173
- Exterior 168
- Exterior Cargo 172
- Fog 171
- Interior 172

LATCH System
- Child Restraints 56

Latches, Seatback 16
License Plate Lamps 374
Light
- Airbag Readiness 183
- Anti-Lock Brake System Warning 188
- Battery Warning 186
- Brake System Warning 187
- Cruise Control 194
- Daytime Running Lamps Indicator 195
- Highbeam On 194
- Malfunction Indicator 190
- Oil Pressure 193
- Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 184
- Passenger Safety Belt Reminder 182
- Safety Belt Reminder 182
- Security 194
- Tire Pressure 189
- Up-Shift 187

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lighting
Exit 173
Limited-Slip Rear Axle 254
Loading Your Vehicle 290
Lockout Protection 107
Locks
Door 104
Lockout Protection 107
Power Door 105
Programmable Automatic Door Locks 106
Rear Door Security Locks 106
Loss of Control 259
Lumbar
Manual Controls 10
Power Controls 11

M

Maintenance Schedule
Additional Required Services 448
At Each Fuel Fill 451
At Least Once a Month 452
Maintenance Schedule (cont.)
At Least Once a Year 452
Introduction 442
Maintenance Footnotes 449
Maintenance Record 460
Maintenance Requirements 442
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts 458
Owner Checks and Services 451
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 455
Scheduled Maintenance 445
Using 443
Your Vehicle and the Environment 442
Malfunction Indicator Light 190
Manual Lumbar Controls 10
Manual Seats 9
Manual Transmission
Fluid 342
Operation 124
Manual Windows 110
Message
DIC Warnings and Messages 200

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview with Compass and Temperature Display 142
Automatic Dimming Rearview with OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display 139
Manual Rearview Mirror 138
Manual Rearview Mirror with OnStar® 138
Outside Convex Mirror 146
Outside Manual Mirrors 145
Outside Power Mirrors 145
MP3 234
MyGMLink.com 467

N

New Vehicle Break-In 115
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts 458

O

Odometer 181
Odometer, Trip 181
Off-Road Driving 260
Off-Road Recovery 257
Oil
Engine 333
Pressure Light 193
Oil, Engine Oil Life System 336
Older Children, Restraints 43
Online Owner Center 467
OnStar® System, see OnStar® Manual 147
Other Warning Devices 160
Outlet Adjustment 178
Outlet(s), Accessory Power 174
Outside
Convex Mirror 146
Manual Mirrors 145
Power Mirrors 145
Owner Checks and Services 451
Owners, Canadian 3

P

Paint, Damage 431
Park (P)
Shifting Into 132
Shifting Out of 134

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Parking
Brake 130
Over Things That Burn 135
Parking Your Vehicle 134
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 184
Passenger Sensing System 86
Passing 257
Passlock® 114
Pickup Conversion to Chassis Cab 296
Power
Accessory Outlet(s) 174
Door Locks 105
Lumbar Controls 11
Retained Accessory (RAP) 117
Seat 10
Steering Fluid 355
Windows 111
Pretensioners, Safety Belt 42
Programmable Automatic Door Locks 106

Q

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts 24

R

Radiator Pressure Cap 348
Radios 205
AM-FM Radio 207
Care of Your CD Player 243
Care of Your CDs 243
Radio with CD 210
Radio with Six-Disc CD 221
Setting the Time for Radios with Radio Data Systems (RDS) 207
Setting the Time for Radios without Radio Data Systems (RDS) 206
Theft-Deterrent 242
Understanding Reception 242
Rear Axle 368
Limited-Slip 254
Rear Door Security Locks 106
Rear Doors 107
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides 39
Rear Seat Operation 17, 18
Rear Seat Passengers, Safety Belts 36
Rear Storage Area 151
Rearview Mirror, Automatic Dimming with Compass and Temperature Display 142

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rearview Mirror, Automatic Dimming with OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display 139
Rearview Mirror with OnStar® 138
Rearview Mirrors 138
Reclining Seatbacks 12
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 455
Recovery Hooks 289
Recreational Vehicle Towing 297
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 101
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System, Operation 102
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire 406
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 403
Replacement Bulbs 374
Reporting Safety Defects
Canadian Government 481
General Motors 481
United States Government 481
Restraint System Check
Checking the Restraint Systems 94
Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash 95
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 117
Right Front Passenger Position, Safety Belts 34
Roadside Assistance Program 470
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out 288
Routing, Engine Drive Belt 459
Running the Engine While Parked 137

S

Safety Belt
Passenger Reminder Light 182
Pretensioners 42
Reminder Light 182
Safety Belts
Care of 427
Center Front Passenger Position 35
Driver Position 25
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 25
Questions and Answers About Safety Belts 24
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides 39
Rear Seat Passengers 36

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Belts (cont.)
Right Front Passenger Position 34
Safety Belt Extender 42
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 34
Safety Belts Are for Everyone 20
Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster 33
Safety Warnings and Symbols 4
Scheduled Maintenance 445
Seatback Latches 16
Seats
Head Restraints 15
Heated Seats 11
Manual 9
Manual Lumbar 10
Power Lumbar 11
Power Seats 10
Rear Seat Operation 17, 18
Reclining Seatbacks 12
Seatback Latches 16
Secondary Latch System 414
Securing a Child Restraint
Center Front Seat Position 71
Rear Seat Position 68
Right Front Seat Position 71
Security Light 194
Service 322
Accessories and Modifications 323
Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle 325
California Proposition 65 Warning 323
Doing Your Own Work 324
Engine Soon Light 190
Publications Ordering Information 482
Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 92
Setting the Time
Radios with Radio Data Systems (RDS) 207
Radios without Radio Data Systems (RDS) 206
Sheet Metal Damage 431
Shifting Into Park (P) 132
Shifting Out of Park (P) 134
Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster 33
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change 162
Sliding Rear Windows 112
Spare Tire 422
Installing 406
Removing 403
Storing 418

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Specifications, Capacities 439
Speedometer 181
Starting Your Engine 118
Steering 255
Steering Wheel, Tilt Wheel 161
Storage Areas
  Cupholder(s) 150
  Front Armrest Storage Area 151
  Glove Box 150
  Rear Storage Area 151
Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow 288
Sun Visors 112
Sunroof 153

T

Tachometer 181
Tailgate 108
Taillamps
  Turn Signal, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps 373
Theft-Deterrent, Radio 242
Theft-Deterrent Systems 112
  Content Theft-Deterrent 113
  Passlock® 114
Tilt Wheel 161
Tire
  Pressure Light 189
Tires 377
  Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels, Cleaning 430
  Buying New Tires 394
  Chains 400
  Changing a Flat Tire 402
  Cleaning 431
  Different Size 396
  If a Tire Goes Flat 401
  Inflation - Tire Pressure 385
  Inspection and Rotation 391
  Installing the Spare Tire 406
  Pressure Monitor System 386
  Removing the Flat Tire 406
  Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 403
  Secondary Latch System 414
  Spare Tire 422
  Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools 418
  Tire Sidewall Labeling 378
  Tire Terminology and Definitions 382
  Uniform Tire Quality Grading 397
  Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 398

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tires (cont.)
Wheel Replacement 398
When It Is Time for New Tires 393
Towing
Recreational Vehicle 297
Towing a Trailer 305
Your Vehicle 297
Traction
Control System (TCS) 253
Limited-Slip Rear Axle 254
Trailer
Recommendations 318
Transmission
Fluid, Automatic 339
Fluid, Manual 342
Up-Shift Light 187
Transmission Operation, Automatic 120
Transmission Operation, Manual 124
Trip Odometer 181
Truck-Camper Loading Information 296
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 162
Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever 161

U

Understanding Radio Reception 242
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 397
Up-Shift Light 187

V

Vehicle
Control 250
Damage Warnings 5
Loading 290
Parking Your 134
Symbols 5
Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data Recorders 476
Vehicle Identification
Number (VIN) 434
Service Parts Identification Label 434
Ventilation Adjustment 178
Visors 112

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

W

Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators 179
Warnings
DIC Warnings and Messages 200
Hazard Warning Flashers 160
Other Warning Devices 160
Safety and Symbols 4
Vehicle Damage 5
Wheels
Alignment and Tire Balance 398
Different Size 396
Replacement 398
Where to Put the Restraint 53
Windows 110
Manual 110
Power 111
Sliding Rear 112
Windshield
Washer 164
Washer Fluid 356
Wiper Blade Replacement 375
Wiper Blades, Cleaning 429
Wiper Fuses 435
Wipers 163
Winter Driving 284

X

XM Radio Messages 240
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 244

Y

Your Vehicle and the Environment 442

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS